



THE  
FOURTH BOOK  
OF  
PRACTICAL PHYSICK.  
Of Womens Diseases.

---

THE  
FIRST PART.  
Of Diseases in the Privities of women.

---

THE  
FIRST SECTION.  
Of Diseases of the Privy Part, and the  
Neck of the Womb.

---

Chap. I. *Of the straitness and largeness of the Orifice.*

**T**Here are three Diseases in this Part. The straitness, and the largeness, and Yard of a woman.

The straitness is, when the Cleft is narrow, that it will not admit a Mans Yard, or with much difficulty, it hinders Child-bearing; and  
D if

if it be from the first confirmation, it is hard to be cured by Physick: but it is enlarged, either by copulation, or by bringing forth of children. Sometimes it is from an Ulcer, or from astringent Medicines given unadvisedly, that they may appear to be Virgins, when they are not.

Sometimes the cleft is shut up outwardly, and there is only passage for the Urin and the Terms, these Women are called *Atreta*, that is shut up and bored. of which Chap. 3. Sometimes it is so close, that neither Terms nor Urin can come forth.

The contrary to this, is largeness of the cleft, or when there are more holes than Nature hath usually, by often Copulation or Child-bearing. This laxity or largeness causeth barrenness and falling out of the Womb, as *Hippocrates* shews in the Nature of Women. And this makes women unpleasat to men.

This is cured by purging after Child-bearing by Fomentation, Baths, Liniments of Allum-water, and the Decoction of astringent Plants.

Take Comfrey roots, Bole, Sanguis Draconis, Pomegranate-flowers, Allum, Mastick, Galls, each half a dram: make a Powder, and with stealed water make a mixture, dip a Pissary therein. Or, Take Oaken leaves, Plantane, each half a handful; Comfrey roots an ounce, Pomegranate peels and flower Sumach, each half an ounce; Allum an ounce, boyl them in Water, and foment the Privities.

Sometimes in hard travel, the space between the Fundament and the privy Cleft, is broken into one hole. *Eros* shews the Cure of it. Some put a long piece of Allum into the Cleft. When there

there are divers passages in a Womens Privities Defficient from the first confirmation, when by Nature error, the passage from the Kraight Gut comes to the Womb.

Chap. 2. Of the Mentula, or Yard in a Woman.

The *Alæ* or Wings in the Privities of a Woman, are of soft spongy flesh like a Cockcomb in shape and colour; the part at the top is hard and nervous, and swells like a Yard in Venery, with much spirit. This part sometimes is as big as a mans Yard, and such women were thought to be turned into men.

It is from too much nourishment of the part, *The causes* from the looseness of it by often handling.

It is not safe to cut it off presently: but first use Driers and Discussers, with things that a little astringe; then gentle Causticks without causing pain, as burnt Allum, *Ægyptiacum*.

Take *Ægyptiacum*, Oyl of Mastick, Rosas, wax, each half an ounce. If these will not do, then cut it off, or tie it with a Ligature of Silk or Horse-hair, till it mortifies.

*Ætius* teacheth the way of Amputation he calls it the *Nympha* or *Clitoris*, between both the Wings: but take heed you cause not pain or inflammation. After cutting, wash with wine with Mirtles, Bayes, Rosas, Pomegranate-flowers boiled in it, and Cypress nuts, and lay on an astringent Powder.

Some Excrecences grow like a tail, and fill the Privities: they differ from a Clitoris: for the desire of Venery is increased in that, and

the rubbing of the Cloaths upon it, causes lust: but in an Excrecence of flesh, they cannot for pain endure Copulation, but you may cut off this better then a Clitoris, because it is all superfluous.

Chap. 3. *Of Atreta or Closures, and Straitness of the Neck and Mouth of the Womb.*

**T**hey are threefold. It is either in the Orifice, or the Neck, or in the middle: it is alwaies hurtful, either to Copulation or the Terms, or to conception, and Child-bearing.

I saw one that had the first: the Orifice was very little, only fit to purge the Terms, and receive Seed; she conceived, and the Midwives discovered it in time of Child-bearing, and the Chyrurgeon opened it, and she was happily delivered: but how the Seed was spent into it, it is not to be understood.

*Lib. de ab. sana. & morb. cau. Fabricus and Eildanus.*  
Flesh, or a Membrane, is from evil confirmation, or a wound, or Ulcer, of which *Benivenius*, *cap. 78.*

The Cleft also may be closed by a wound or Ulcer, as in a woman who with the French Pox, had all eaten off, and it grew together after, only there was a little passage for Urin.

This is, either when the sides grow together from an Ulcer, or when proud flesh stops it up, which is sometimes in the French Pox.

*The Signs.* When it is in the Privities, it is to be seen; but when in the Neck or Orifice of the Womb, it is not known, but when the Terms are to flow, or when they copulate; and it is either broken

Chap. 3. *Of the Atreta of the Neck of the Womb, &c.*

broken by the force of blood, or there is pain, and being Virgins, they are taken to be with child; for if it last long, the womb swells and the whole body is blewish.

These either hinder the Terms from the neck of the womb, or from the veins of it. If inflammation or ulcer was before, this disease may be suspected to be; if there the closing be by the Membrane, the place is white; if by Flesh, it is red. And it is known by the touch; for the Membrane is harder then Flesh.

The inconveniences are great, either in *Co-The Progulation*, Conception, or Child-bearing especially; for the child cannot get forth without hazard of it self or mother.

It is easier cured when it is from a Membrane only, because it is easily cut or broken; that in the Orifice of the Womb is not to be cured, because the instruments cannot reach it.

Take away that which stops the passage, a *The Cure.* Membrane that is outward is easily cut; but if it be in the neck of the womb or the flesh, it is hard. For if the cut be large, there is pain and bleeding, and the wound is hard to be cured because the neck of the Bladder is easily hurt thereby.

*Uviers* teacheth this Operation in his Observations. And *Hippocrates* in his Book of Sterility shows how a Membrane may be taken away without cutting.

If flesh grow from an ulcer after purging, use Driers and Discussers to diminish it, with *Frankincense*, Birthwort, Roses, Pomgranate-flowers, Mastic, Myrrh, Aloes &c. as in Chap. 2.

*Nicol. Florensius.* Some think this disease may come from dryness, but it is incredible. If it come from a hard tumor, soften and dissolve it with Butter, oyl of sweet Almonds, Lillies &c.

Chap. 4. Of Pustles and Roughness of the Privities.

**R**oughness and Itching come from Pustles in the neck of the womb and Privities, with scurvy and swellings which itch and pain.

*The causes.* They are from an adust humor malignant and sharp, which abounding, evacuate themselves by these loose and moist parts, and their sticking exasperate the flesh, this is in the French Pox.

*The Signs.* They declare it themselves.  
*The prognostick.* Its is stubborn, long, and infectious to men and hard to be cured.

*The Cure.* If the adust sharp humors come from the whole body, prepare with Borrage, Fumitory, Succory, Endive, and the like, then evacuate them with Senna, Epithimum, Syrup of Apples, Violets, Roses, Catholicon, Confection Hamech, pills of Fumitory, Tartar.

Let blood if there be fulness, first in the Arm, then in the Ankle; but if it be from the French Pox first use Guajacum and Sarsa, and the like.

Foment the part often with a hot Decoction of Dock roots, Fumitory, Hips, Pellitory, or use this Oyntment; Take Plantane and rose-water, each four ounces; Sal. gem, Niter, Alum. each three drams; Sublime a dram and a half: boil them to the third part strain them, and add Verdigrise a scruple: then use gentler means two days after till the Pustles fall off, and new flesh appear, and then use the Oyntment again.

Chap. 5. Of Condyloma in the Neck of the Womb.  
Let the Diet be to resist evil humours, of good Juice, avoid salt, sharp and sour things.

Chap. 5. Of Condyloma in the Neck of the Womb.

**C**ondyloma is a tubercle or excrecence with heat and pain: for these parts are wrinkled, and when the wrinkles swell, there is a Condyloma, Sometimes it is without Inflammation and soft, or with Inflammation and hard. It is usual in the Privities and Fundament of such as have the French Pox.

*The causes.* They are from a sharp malignant humour, which is always in the Pox, and sometimes they follow, hard clefts or Chaps.

*The Signs.* They are pain and burning, the skin is wrinkled; and when they are many, they are like a Bunch of Grapes.

They are hard to be cured, if they are from the Pox, first cure that, and then they often vanish of themselves.

After general Evacuations proper against the Pox, use Tropicks: first see if there be Inflammation, and then abate pain. As. Take Oyl of Linseed and Roses, each an ounce; Oyl of Eggs half an ounce; mix them in a leaded Mortar, Or Take Pellitory, Mallows, Althæa, each half a handfull; Chamomil-flowers two pugils, Linseed and Fennel-greek, each half an ounce. Boil them to a pint, add Oyl of Roses three ounces inject it with a Syringe.

If there be no Inflammation use Driers and Repellers, as Vervain, Ivy, Acacia, Pomgranate-peels and flowers: for Baths and Fomentations and after add Discussers, as Camomil and Thyme.



If it be old and hard, first soften it with the same, and after thrice using them, use Digestives and Driers that are strong, as a Powder. Take round Birchwort a dram, Savin, Hermodactils burnt, each two drams; burnt Allum two drams, red lead a dram, Calcitis half a dram; sprinkle it upon the loose flesh.

Or, take Aloes, Frankincense, Myrrh, each a dram; Ammoniacum dissolved in Vinegar a dram and half, Allum two drams, red Lead two drams, Galls half a dram, Turpentine, Oyl of Tartar, each a dram; with Oyl of Roses and Wax, make an Oynment.

This is very strong: Take Turpentine an ounce, Oyl of Nutmegs two ounces, red Lead two drams, Allum, Vitriol, each a dram; Verdgreece half a dram, Sublimats a scruple, with Wax make an Oynment, or of Balsom of Mercury.

Tetrab. 4. If Medicines will not do the Ancients advise  
ferm. J. c. 3. Burning, of which see Eritus.

Chap. 7. Of Warts in the Neck of the Privities of the Womb.

**T**hey are from a gross feculent and malignant humor sent to the skin & turned to a Node,  
*The Signs.* They are known by their shape: the malignant are known by their hardness, and heat, and blewiness, filth, and pain.

*The Prog<sup>m</sup> no<sup>t</sup> sick.* They are often hard to be cured, because the pox is with them, and they are in a place to which Medicines are hard to be applied, and to continue.

The Myrmeciz are not cut off, but they leave

a great ulcer, the Thymi and Glavi grow again. Acrochordoses once cut, leave no root.

After Universals, and order of diet, either use *The Cure.* Medicines, or cut or burn them to discuss, then use Sage dried with Figs, Orange, Rue burnt, dry Sage, Frankincense, with Wine and Vinegar, or Snakes skins with Figs: these also dry.

These corrode, eat and burn, as juyce of wild Cowcumbers, with Salt, Milk of Figs, Sheep-bung, Goats-gall, with Niter, Aqua fortis, Spirit of Vitriol, Sulpher, Butter of Antimony. Take heed that you hurt not the parts adjacent, but defend them with Bole, sealed Earth, Rose-water and Vinegar; if you put the Corrosives into Nutshells, change them twice or thrice in a day, and wash the part with a cleansing Decoction, and then cut or burn.

Chap. 7. Of the Hemorrhoids of the Womb.

**T**he veins that end in the neck of the womb often swell, like the Hemorrhoid: it is from gross blood that comes to these veins out of the time of the terms.

Inordinate flux of terms may occasion it, when *The Cause.* they flow out of the usual time, they grow thick, and cannot get out of the veins, but swell them.

They are to be touched, and with a *Speculum* *The Signs.* *matricis* to be seen. There is pain and bleeding without order: she is pale and lazy.

Correct the blood, purge, and bleed in the *The Cure.* arm to derive and revel, of which in the diseases of the womb;

if

If pain be. abate it by sitting in a Decoction of Mallows, Althæa, Chamomel, Melilot flower, Moulin, Linseed, Fœnugreek; of which all make Fermentations and Oynments, with Butter, Populeon, and Opium, if there be pain.

Take Populeon Oyl of Roses, and Sweet Almonds, fresh Butter, each half an ounce; Saffron a scruple, with the yelk of an Egg, make an Oynment, Or,

Take Mucilage of Quinces, Althæa, each half an ounce; Oyl of Roses, and Hen-grase, each a dram; the yelk of an Egg, and Saffron half a dram, mix them in a Leaden Mortar.

If pain be gone or abated, and they bleed not, use Dryers of Bole, Earth of Lemnos, Acacia, Ceruse, f oth of Silver, Lead burnt and washed long Birthwort, Allum, Verdigrece.

If they swell with blood, evaporate it, or ferment with the Decoction of Mallows, Althæa, Pellitory, Chamomil-flowers, Moulin, Melilot, seeds of Line and Fœnugreek. If they do no good, open them by Fig-leaves rub'd upon them, or by Horl eches, of which Cap. 2.

If there be proud flesh, take it off, as is shew-ed.

If they bleed gently, let Nature alone to the work, for it is good, and frees from other diseases. If the flux be great, and abate the strength open a vein in the arm divers times, and do as in overflowing of the Terms.

Question, How do the Hæmorrhoids differ from the Terms flowing or stop?

Mercurialis saith, That though a flux of Terms be

Chap. 8. Of Ulcers in the Neck of the Womb.

be immoderate, yet it hath its periods, and is without pain, and makes not the body lean; but it is contrary in the Hæmorrhoids. But this is not true: for the body is not made lean alwaies by the Hæmorrhoids, nor do the Courses keep their periods always.

Besides the pain which is almost always in the Hæmorrhoids, they differ in that the terms flow from the veins of the womb and its neck: but the Hæmorrhoids are when the blood flows too much to the veins that nourish the privities, and sticks or is evacuated.

Chap. 8. Of Ulcers in the Neck of the Womb.

They are seldome cured in the body of the womb, and they are simple and clean, or so-did and malignant.

Are a flux of sharp humors that lasts long in the Pox and Gonorrhæa. Corrupt after-birth and courses after child-bearing detained, inflammation turned to imposthumes; these are the internal. *The causes*

The external are sharp Medicines, hard travel, a great child taken out by force, violent lechery, wounds, falls, strokes.

Are pain and constant biting that increaseth especially in copulation, or when wise or Hydromel is inject. You may also see it with a Speculum; also there is matter gentle or filthy; if the ulcer go towards the bladder, they piss hot and often: there is pain in the roots of the eyes, to the hands and fingers, fainting, and a little Fever sometimes. *The Signs.*

The

The external Causes are to be related by the Patient. If it be from the Pox Gonorrhoea, the signs of them will appear, of which Hippocrates.

They are hard to be cured, because they are in a part fit to receive humors, soft and moist, and that hath consent with many parts. Hence are divers Symptoms: the great, old, and foul are worst; when they corrode, and are hollow, they are seldom cured; they that may easily have Medicines applied to them, are easiest cured.

First, stop the flux of humors to the part, if it be either from the whole body, or any Part. And amend the distemper of the womb, that it may neither breed nor receive bad humors. If the French Pox be with it, resist that first.

*The Cure.*

If there be pain, first abate that with Milk Rectified, or with three whites of Eggs, and Mucilage of Fleabane, or an Emulsion of Poppy-seeds. Or, Take *Althæa roots an ounce, Dill seed two drams, Barley a pugil, Fenugreek and Linseed, each an ounce; Fleabane and Poppy-seed, each half an ounce; boyl them in Milk.* Of which in pain of the womb.

In a foul ulcer, first use Cleansers, as Whey, Barley-water, Honey, Worm-wood, Smallage, Oribus, Orris, Birthwort, Myrrh, Turpentine, Allum. As, Take *new Milk boyled a pint, Honey half a pint, Orris powder half an ounce.* Use it hot often every day.

When that which was injected, is voided, wash with the Decoction of Mallows, and put up this Pessary: Take *Eruum and Lentils in Powder and Orris, each two drams; with Honey.* Or.

Take

Take *Diapompholigos, with Frankincense, Mastick, Myrrh, as the Ulcer requires.*

Of such Fumes; As, Take *Frankincense, Mastick, Myrrh, Storax Calamith, Gum of Juniper, Labdanum, each an ounce: make a powder, or Troches with Turpentine.*

If there be suspicion of the French Pox, add a little Cianabar. In a very foul ulcer, and Ægyptiacum or Apofolorum, or a little Spirit of Wine. In a creeping corroding ulcer, with Cleansers mix cold, drying and astringent Medicines, Allum-water, Plantane and Rose-water, with Pomegranate-flowers boiled, and Pomegranate-peels, and Cypress-nuts, is also good, and with Aloes.

After cleansing, fill it with flesh, and heal it up. As, Take *Tutty washed half an ounce, Lisborge Cerusa, Sarcocol, each two drams; with Oyl of Roses and Wax make an Ointment.*

Or smocke the Privities with Myrrh, Frankincense, Gum of Juniper, Labdanum two drams in powder, with Turpentine make Troches.

Or use Sulphur, or Allum Baths, and Plasters.

Inwardly give vulnerary Potions. As, Take *Agrimony, Burnet, Plantane, Knot-grass, each two pugils; China three drams, Coriander-seed half a dram, Currans half an ounce: boyl them in Hen-broath, give it twice a day. Or give Turpentine and Sugar for a month, or a dram of Pills of Bdelium.*

If the body consume, give Asses milk, with Conserve of Roses for a month.

Chap.

## Chap. 9. Of Clefts in the Neck of the Womb.

These are long Ulcers that are small, like those in the hands and feet in Winter; they eat off the skins, & are sometimes deep with hard lips, if old: sometimes they are dry, and sometimes bleed.

*The causes.* They come from hard travel, when some parts

in the neck of the womb are broken by a great Child, or violent Copulation, or flux of sharp humors, that stick in the parts, and corrode.

*The Signs.* If it be new, it is hidden sometimes, and known in Copulation, by pain and bleeding.

*The Prog. nostick.* The new are easier cured, than when they are old and callous.

*The Cure.* If they come from hard travel, make a Clyster of the Decoction of Roses, Plantane, Birthwort, Bole, Sanguis Draconis, Frankincense, with the white of an Egg, a Peffery.

If from sharpe humors; after universall Evacuations, use Topicks that bind without bringing (if the clefts be not callous) as Oyl of Linseed and Roses, with the yelk of an Egg, and Juyc of Plantain mixed in a Leaden Mortar.

*Ung. Symplicium apud Gal.* Take Oyl of Roses eight ounces, stir it in a Leaden Mortar, till it is black and thick, then put in the powders of Litharge of Silver and Ceruss.

If they are callous, make an ointment of oyl of Lillies, Marrow of a Deer, Turpentine and Wax. If they are malignant, cure them as Fistulae, of which in the Chapter following.

If there be Itch and pain; Take Diapompholigos, Populeon, each an ounce; Sugar of Lead, Camphire

## Chap. 10. Of Fistulae in the Neck of the Womb.

Take each a scruple; make an Ointment

Let the Diet be moist, of good Juice, Chicken, Veal Kid, rear Eggs, Mallows, Bugloss, Borage; Abstain from sharp and salt meats.

## Chap. 10. Of Fistulae in the Neck of the Womb.

Many times there are Ulcers in these parts, because they are soft, and easily corroded, and are hard to be cured.

Some of them are straight, others crooked. Some Simple, others hollow.

*The causes.* If matter stay there, it corrodes and makes a thorough, and divides the parts, and makes a Callus; and when the matter is divided, the parts divided cannot unite.

*The Signs.* It is known by the figure of the ulcer, there is a callous Lip, and a thin evil matter, when it is pressed, flows out; there is no pain, except it reach a sensible part. Sometimes it reacheth the bladder, and then the urin comes forth at the Fistula. Sometimes the Fundament, and then the Ung appears in the Fistula.

A new Fistula is easier cured than an old, and straight than a crooked, It is scarce to be cured in a Chochimical old body, when it pierceth the parts adjacent.

*The Cure.* First, use Universals and good diet, then see if it may be cured by Medicines, or better left to nature to evacuate Excrements thereby.

If the last is best, use a pallative Cure, by opening purging and sweating twice in a year, and conjunctions and strengtheners, and lay up a Plaster of Diapalma.

If

If you hope for a Cure, after universals, give drying vulnerary Drinks; of male Fern root, Centaury, Agrimony, Bettony, Ladlet-mantle &c.

Then use Topicks; first dilate the Orifice (if it be strait) with a Spunge or Gentian roots, then consume the Callus; but first make it soft with Oyl of Lillies, Deers Marrow, Turpentine and Wax.

Three things consume a Callus; Medicines, Cutting and Burning, there is a new strait. First, use Gentian, black Hellebore, Ægyptiacum, or Vigo's powder with a pencil. Or, Take Sublimate half a scruple, Rose or Plantane-water six ounces, set it upon Embers. If it be towards the womb, take heed of strong Medicines.

If it be callous and foul, burn it either by a Caustick or hot Iron. These are good in the outward of the Neck; then cleanse and heal.

Chap. 11. Of a Cancer in the Womb.

It is seldom seen, and never cured; but here I shall speak of that in the neck of the womb which is ulcerated, or not ulcerated.

**The Causes.** It is from terms burnt, and hot burnt humors that are black, that flow thither. It is after long scirrhus tumors, that have been immoderately softened. It is first not ulcerated, and when the humors are more corrupt, it is ulcerated.

**The Signs.** They are hard to be known at first, because it is a tumor without pain, & after there is a pricking in it, and a pain in the Groins, Loins, and bottom of the Belly. The tumor is hard, blew

Chap. 11. of a Cancer in the Womb.

with blew sinking Lip. When it is ulcerated, the Symptoms are all worse, and there is a thin black, sinking matter. Sometimes much blood that is dangerous, a gentle Fever, Loathing, trouble of Mind, the Cheeks are red, from the vapors that rise up from the womb.

It is hard to be cured, because mild Medicines are not felt, and strong exasperate; and the part makes it more hard because it is neglected at the first, and increaseth.

Let the Physician prevent ulceration: or if it be to hinder the increase of it, let diet be against Melancholy: prepare and purge Melancholy.

This powder for many days given, is excellent. Take Smaragus, Saphir, and East Bezoar-stone, each a dram; give every day three or four grains with Scabious or Carduus water.

Let the Troicks not be biting at first. But foment with juvee of Plantane, Nightshade, Purslane, or use Diapompholigos. Or, Take Juvee of Plantane, Nightshade, Purslane, each two ounces; Mucilage of Fleabane an ounce. Oyl of Roses three ounces: stir them in a leaden Mortar. Or Take Oyl of Roses, of Eggs, each an ounce and half; Sugar of Ied a dram: stir them in a leaden Mortar, then add Litharge, Ceruss each three drams; Tutty a dram, Camphire a scruple. Or

Take Juvee of Nightshade six ounces. Tutty and burnt Lead, each two drams; Camphire half a dram: stir them long in a leaden Mortar, and add powder of Cray-fish.

Inject a Decoction of Cray-fish: and if pain be great, foment with Mallows, Althæa, Water-lilies, Coriander, Dill, Fleabane-seed, with Saf-

from in Milk: or make a Cataplasm of the same.

Some use Antimony, Arsenick, &c. which are good in others parts. But this cannot bear them.

A noble Woman had on the right side of her Face an ulcerated Cancer; and when all the French, Italian, German, Spanish Physicians could not cure her, a Barber cured her only with Chickens sliced thin, and laid on often every day.

Chap. 12. *Of a Gangrene and Sphacel in the Womb.*

Sometimes the whole Womb is gangrenated, and it is from the Privities that receive many Excrements apt to corrupt.

*The Cause.* It is from an Inflammation and Ulcer not well cured, because the part hath many Excrements which easily quench the natural heat, and thus the part mortifies.

*The Signs.* There is an usual heat in the Neck of the Womb, and a Fever, with horror all over the body; then the colour changeth in the part; it is black and blew, without pulse or sense. When it is cut or pricked, it stinks, and the strength decays, and the heart faints.

*The Prognostick.* It is very dangerous, and worse when it goes to the womb than outwards. Some have had the womb fall out, and have lived, which besides

We saw at Avinion in an old noble Woman *Æsius leth* Anno 1635, *v. cap. 72.*

Stop the putrification, take away that which is rotten, by scarrifying if you can, then wash with the Decoction of Wormwood, Lupine, and with Ægyptiacum, and apply this Cataplasm: *degr. 1.* Take Orobis and Bean-flour, each two ounces; Oxy- in 9. *Rhassa* mul a pins, boyl them, add Lupines, Wormwood, Aloes, c. *de exitu* *matricis* and Mirrh.

Cut off the dead flesh, strengthen the principal parts, the Heart, lest the Spirits be infected with evil vapors that fly by the Arteries. *The Cure.*

Give Conserve of Borrage, Bugloss, Gill-flowers, Diamargariton frigid, Electuary of Gems frigid Confection of Hyaciaths. Syrup of Sorrel, Pomegranates Borrage; and apply Epithems to the Heart, *Vnicrus* cured a noble Woman aged twenty-five, she had a Puffle in her Privities in the Dog-days from violent Lechery with her Husband, and she used a Cataplasm from a silly Chyrurgion, and in few days it rotted, grew black, and mortified and went towards the Fundament very fast. *In Obser- vatio.*



THE  
FOURTH BOOK.

THE  
SECOND SECTION.

Of the Diseases of the  
WOMB.

Chap. 1. *Of the Knowledge of the Temper  
of the Womb.*

*Lib. medicus.  
mulebris.*

**M**ark Anthony Ulmus, Physician of Bononia, shews the Temper of the Womb: He saith, That a Beard in Women sheweth that they have a hot Womb, and hot Stones. It comes with the beginning of the Terms, and when the Breasts swell, and is hard to be seen.

*Lib. 3. de  
hui axi.  
c. 11.*

Aristotle saith, That some Women have hair in their Chin, when their Courses stop, and when they have a hot Womb and Stones.

But there are more certain signs of heat:  
1. When hard hair comes forth suddenly, thick, black and long, and larg about. If they come forth slow, thin, soft, yellowish, and

Chap. 1. *Of the knowl:dg of the temper of the Womb.*

but few, not spreading: the Womb is cold. Also when the Terms come forth at 12 years of age, it is a sign of a hot Womb, and when they last long, the blood is red, hot, but not very much. In an old Constitution they come later, and the blood is cold and waterish, and they end sooner. If it be hot and moist, they flow plentifully, and last till after fifty. If it be hot and dry, the blood is yellow, thin and sharp, and pricks the Privities.

If it be cold and moist, the blood comes late forth, with difficulty, and it is whitish and thin. If it be cold and dry the Terms come forth very late, and with difficulty, and seldom continue till forty, and the blood is thick and little.

The third sign is from Lechery: for they who have hot wombs, desire Copulation sooner and more vehemently, and are much delighted therewith: they who are cold, do the contrary. The hot and moist are not tired with much Venery. The hot and dry have great Lust, and a Frenzy if they want it: but they are quickly tired, because there are but few Spirits. If it be cold and moist, they are not soon lecherous, and are easily satisfied; and if they miscarry often, the womb is made colder, and they delight not in the sport: but Copulation doth them good, and makes them more youthful. If it be cold and dry, they desire not a man in a long time, and take no delight, because the Spirits are few.

The fourth sign is from often Conception: for the hot conceive often, and bring forth Males or Viragoes, if the seed of the man agrees with it. The cold doth the contrary.

A hot and moist Womb is very fruitful, if the man be well tempered; and though he be old and weak, yet she will conceive by him. Sometimes they have twins, or over-do, and have a Mole.

Hot and dry are fruitful, but not so much as the former.

Cold and moist are hard to conceive, especially when they are in years; when they are young and the Seed of the man is hot and dry, they conceive males; but seldom well shaped or healthful: and the woman while she is with Child, is sickly.

A cold and dry Womb is commonly barren; and if they conceive, the Male Seed is hot and moist, they bring forth Females; and if Males, they are tall, and quickly look old.

### Chap. 2. *Of the hot Distemper of the Womb.*

**H**eat of the Womb is necessary for Conception; but if it be too much, it nourisheth not the Seed of the man, but disperseth its heat and hinders the Conception.

*The causes.* This preternatural heat is from the Birth sometimes, and makes them barren. If afterwards, it is from hot causes that bring the heat and the blood to the womb. From internal and external Medicines, too much hot meats and drinks, and Exercise.

*The Signs.* They are prone to Lust, have few Courses, yellow, or black, or burnt, or sharp; they have hair betimes upon their Privities; they are subject to the Headach, and there are signs of much Choler, their Lips are dry.

When

### Chap. 2. *Of the hot Distemper of the Womb.*

When this distemper is strong, they have few Terms, and out of order: they are bad and hard to flow, and in time they are Hypochondriacks, and for the most part barren; and there is sometimes a frenzy of the womb.

*The Cure*  
Use Coolers: so that they offend not the Vessels that must be open for the flux of the terms: therefore.

Use inwardly Succory, Endive, Violets, Water-lillies, Sorrel, Lettuce, Sanders, and Syrups and Conserve made thereof. As,

Take *Conserve of Succory, Violets, Water-lillies, Sorrel, each an ounce; Conserve of Roses half an ounce, Diamargariton frigid, Diarris Santalon, each half a dram; with Syrup of Violets or Juice of Citrus make an Electuary.*

Outwardly use Ointment of Galen's Cooler, Ointment of Roses, Cerot of Sanders, Oyl of Roses, Violets, Water-lillies, Gourds, Venusavel to the Back and Loins: or make Cataplasm or Barley-meal, Roses powdered, Violets, Water-lillies, Sanders, with juice or water of Plantane, Water-lillies, Succory, Lettuce, Oyl of Roses, Violets, Water-lillies.

Baths are good to sit in, and cooling, Fomentations; and after let her take some of the Coolers mentioned. In great heat, use this cooling Pessary.

Take *Opium a scruple, Goose grease two scruples, Wax and Honey, each four scruples: Oyl an ounce, pass mulier bites of two Eggs.* *Eraf. de. cap. 7.*

This was from an Opinion the Ancient had, that Opium was cold: but take heed of the using it too much, lest the narcotick quality hurt.

E 4

Let



Let the Air be cool, her Garments thin : let her meat be with Lettice, Endive, Succory, Barley : give no hot meats nor strong wine, except it be waterish and thin. Rest is good both in body and mind. She must not copulate, but she may sleep much.

### Chap. 3. Of the cold Distemper of the Womb.

**The causes.** **T**his causeth many Evils, and Barrenness. They are contrary to those of a hot Distemper, cold Air, Rest and Idleness, and cooling Medicines.

**The Signs.** It is known by their not desire of Lachery, not receiving pleasure in the time of Copulation, when they spend their Seed. The Terms are flegmatick, thick and slimy, and flow not rightly : there is wind in the Womb, the Seed is crude, waterish, with a Gonorrhoea.

**The Prognostick.** It is the cause of Obstructions and Barrenness and is hard to be cured.

**The Cure.** Use things proper to heal the womb, as this Water :

Take Galangal, Cinnamon, Nutmeg, Mace, Cloves each two drams ; Ginger, Cubebs, Zedoary, Cardamoms, each an ounce ; grains of Paradise, long Pepper, each half an ounce : beat them, and put them in six quarts of wine for eight days, then add Sage, Mints, Balm, Motherwort, each three handful : let them stand eight days more, then pour off the wine, and beat the Herbs and the Spices, and then pour on the wine and distil them.

Another. Take Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Cloves, Mace, Ginger, Cubebs, Cardamoms, grains of Paradise,

### Chap. 4. Of the moist Distemper of the Womb.

dic, each an ounce and half ; Galangal six drams, long Pepper half an ounce, Zedoary five drams, bruise them, and add six quarts of Wine, put them in a Cellar nine days, daily stirring them ; then add Mints two handfuls, then let them stand fourteen days, pour off the Wine, and bruise them, and then pour on the Wine again, and distil them.

Quercetan hath an Hysterick, Extract, a greater In pher- and a less ; use outwardly Fomentations, Baths, oc. restit. Bags of hot Roots, as Birthwort, Lovage, Vaccap. 25.

lerian, Angelica, Burnet, Masterwort, Calamus, Madder, Elicampne, Orris, and Herbs : as Mugwort, Balm, Motherwort, Savin, Penny-royal, Calamints, Organ, Ditrany, Majoram. Rue Betony, Rosemary, Lavender, Sage, Stoechas-flowers, Seed of Smellage, Parsley, Rue, Carrots, Anise, Fennel, Cummin, Lovage, Pa. fly.

Anoint with Oyl of Lillies, Rue, Angelica, Bays, Cinnamon, Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg. Or, Take Labdanum two ounces, Frankincense, Mastick, liquid Storax, each half an ounce ; Oyl of Cloves, Nutmegs, each half a scruple ; Oyl of Lillies, Rue, each an ounce ; with Wax make a Plaister.

**A Fume.** Take Frankincense, Mirrh, Mastick, each a dram ; Bayberries a dram and half, Labdanum two drams, Storax, Cloves, each a dram ; Gum Arabick and wise, make Troches, or Pessaries of the same. Let the diet be warming, and the air, the meat of easie concoction, seasoned with Anise, Fennel, Thyme. Avoid Milk-meats and raw Fruits.

### Chap. 4 Of the moist Distemper of the Womb.

**T**his is commonly joyned with a cold Distemper, and causeth Barrenness, and is from the same

same causes, as a cold Distemper: for commonly cold things do moisten. It is commonly in women that are idle.

**The Signs.** They that have moist wombs abound in Courses, but they are waterish and thin; the Privities are wet, they have the Whites, and desire not Copulation much, and delight not in it; they retain not the seed; and if they conceive when the child is big, they abort or miscarry.

If it last long, it is hard to be cured. If it be much, they conceive not.

**The Prog-  
nosick.  
The Cure.**

It is by Driers, and things that cure the cold distemper, are good against the moist: because all Healers have a drying power. Use Sulphur, Baths and Injections, Beware of Astringents, lest the evil humors be stopp'd, and the disease increased.

Chap. 5. Of the dry Distemper of the Womb.

**I**N this the womb is hardened, of it self it is fleshy and soft, and moistned by blood for Conception.

It is sometimes from the birth or old age, when they are past child-bearing. If it be from drying causes, they are barren before they are old.

**The causes.**

Diseases and Medicines dry the womb, as Inflammations, Feavers, and when blood flows not to it, nor goes to the bottom of it, by reason of the straitness of the Veins, or Obstructions, as in Virago's, and such as never conceived; and if they void any blood, it is from the neck of the womb, and not from the bottom.

**The Signs.**

They void little seed, and are slow in Venery.

the terms are few, the mouth of the womb is dry, and they are slender, of a dry Constitution, their lower Lip is always chapt, and blackish.

This distemper is hard to be cured in any part, especially if it be old.

Use Moistners; as Borage, Bugloss, Mercury, Wallows, Althaea, Violets, sweet Almonds, Pistach's, Pine-nuts, Jujubes, Dates, Figs, Raisins.

**The Prog-  
nosick.  
The Cure.**

Of which are made Syrups, Conserver, Emulsion, Candies, &c.

Outward Remedies are made of the same, adding Time, Fenugreek Seeds, Lillies, Brank-urine, Pellitory, &c.

Fomentations are made with Milk; and after bathing, anoint the region of the womb and the belly, to the privities, with Oyl of sweet Almonds, Lillies, Lin-seed, Jofamin, fresh Butter, Hens and Goose-grease.

Let the Diet be moistning, the Air moist, the meat fatning of much nourishment and small exercise. Let sleep be a little longer than usual. Great labour, anger, sadness, fasting, do hurt.

Chap. 6. Of Compound Distempers, and first of Cold and Moist.

**T**HERE is seldom a simple Distemper in the part, and commonly there is matter which feed it. It is usually cold and moist, which gathers excrements of that sort, either in the whole body, or in the womb after the terms.

Are all things that breed cold and flegmatick humors in the whole body or the womb?

**The Causes.  
They**

*The Cure.* They conceive not, and are of ill habit of body; the terms seldom flow right, and they have sometimes the whites.

*The Prog-  
nostick* It is harder to cure than a simple distemper.

*The Cure.* The cold humor is in fault; therefore prepare it with Syrup of Mugwort, Mints, Bettony, Hyssop, with a Decoction proper.

As, Take Fennel roots an ounce, Valerian, Elicampane, Masterwort, each half an ounce; Pennyroyal, Mugwort, Motherwort, Nep, Marjoram, each a handful; Rosemary and Sage-flowers, each two pugils; Siler Montani, Fennel, Anniseed, Parsnep-seed, each a dram: boil them to ten ounces strained, add Sugar, Syrup of Mugwort two or three ounces, Cinnamon-water half an ounce: make a Portion for three doses:

Then purge it with Agarick, Mechoacan, Turbith; and if other humors be mixed with Flegm, and Senna, and the like: or use Pills de tribus Aloephanginæ, Mastick, of Hieria with Agarick, Sine quibus, Or, Take Agarick a dram and half, Senna two drams; infuse them in Mugwort-water: to three ounces strained. add Diaphanion or Diacarthamum two drams; Strain and add Syrup of Mugwort half an ounce, Cinnamon-water half a dram.

After universal Evacuation, use Pessaries. As, Take Mercury, bruise it, and put it in a bag of white Silk; anoint it with Butter or Honey of Roses.

Or, Take Benedilla laxativa three drams, Agrick two drams, Gith-seed a dram, Pease-meal six drams, with juyce of Mercury make Pessaries in a Sarsnet Bag. Or, Take Hieria a dram, Agarick half a dram, Baellium a dram, with Honey make Pessary, or

Chap. 6. Compound Distempers, &c.

or make it with powder of Agarick and Troches of Coliquintida, or five sweats of Guajacum, China and Sarja. As,

Take Guajacum a pound and eighteen ounces, Infuse them in twelve pints of water twenty-four hours, then boyl them to the consumption of the third part, give six or eight ounces hot in the morning, and let her sweat.

Pour water to the reliques, and boyl them to the consumption of the third part for an ordinary drink.

You may use China and Sarja the same way; and because in a decoction some strength is lost, and so great a quantity is tedious for women, you may distil them, and give a less quantity with things proper for the womb.

As, Take Guajacum a pound, or Sarja eight ounces, Angelica, Elicampane, each an ounce; Mugwort two handfuls, Dittany half a handful, add six pints of water or wine steep them two days, then distil them, and give two ounces of the water.

Let her meat be roasted Birds, Hens, Capons, Partridges, Mutton, sweet Almonds, Raisins. Let her abstain from salt and sharp things.

If these sweats are unpleasant, give them in the third and fourth Chapter internal and external. As, Take Conserve of Marjoram, Rosemary, Bettony, each two ounces; of Balm an ounce, Diamoschu dulcis, Diamargarita calid, each a dram; candied Eryngus and Irons, each half an ounce; with Syrup of Mugwort make an Electuary; and use Baths to sit in mentioned.

Drying Spaw waters are good to drink, or to sit in.

Let

Let the diet be as in Chap. 3 and 4, give the flesh of wild Mountain-fowl. Pidgeons, Hens, Capons, Marston roasted and spiced, and old wine, and let her exercise.

*Of the hot and dry Distemper of the Womb, with Choler.*

Do as in Chap. 5. purge the Choler, whether it be from the whole body, or from the Liver with Syrup of Roses, Manna, Tamarinds, Rhubarbs, Senna, &c.

Chap. 7. *Of the ill shape of the Womb, and first of the straitness of it and its Vessels.*

**T**his is a Disease of evil conformation from Nature, when it can be stretched out no further, this makes an abortion in the fourth or fifth month.

But it is wonderful in its natural shape when it will stretch according to the proportion of the child, and after child-bearing be as small as at first.

*Of straitness of the Vessels of the Womb.*

This is usual and hinders the flux of the terms and conception, it is in the vessels of the womb, and of the neck thereof.

*The causes.* Are thick tough humors that stop the mouths of the Veins and Arteries: these are bred of gross or much nourishment, when the heat of the womb is so weak, that it cannot attenuate the humors, these either flow from the whole body, or are gathered in the womb.

Sometimes vessels are closer by inflammation or Schirrus, or other tumor. 3. They are stopp'd by

Chap. 7. *Of the ill shape of the Womb.*

by astringent Medicines. 4. By compression. 5. From a Scar, or Flesh, or a Membrane that grows after a wound.

Stoppage of the terms shews straitness, which hinders conception: and this stoppage is known by crudities abounding in the body, which are known by their signs. Sometimes thick flegm comes from the womb, if there was a wound before, or the Secundine was pulled out by force,

Stoppage of terms from an old obstruction by humors, is hard to be cured; if it be from disorderly use of astringents, it is more curable: if it be from a Schirrus, or other tumor that compresseth or closeth the vessels, that cannot be cured, the disease is incurable.

Obstructions are taken away by the means mentioned in the cold and moist Distemper of the Womb: flegm must be purged, and the must be let blood, as in stoppage of the terms.

After Universals; come to the obstruction with Medicines that move the terms: these take away the cause, as in the Chapter of the cold Distemper of the Womb. Or,

Take *Asparagus-roots, Parsly-roots, each an ounce; Madder-roots half an ounce, red Pease half a handfull, Penny-royal, Calamints, each a handfull; Wall-flowers, Dill-flowers, each two pugils; boyl, Strain, and add Syrup of Mugwort an ounce and half.*

Or, Take *Biribwort and white Dittany-roots, each an ounce; Costus, Cinnamon, Galangal, each half an ounce, Rosemary, Penny-royal, Calamints, Bistony-flowers, each a handfull; Anise and Fennel-seeds, each a dram; Saffron half a dram with Vine.*

Or use Topicks; as, Take *Mugwort, Marjo-*

ram. Calamints, Mercury, Penny-royal, each two handfulls; Sage, Rosemary, Bays, Chamomil-flowers each a handfull; boyl them in water, somen the groins and the bottom of the belly: or let her sit in a Bath up to the Navel; and then anoint about the groins, with Oyl of Rue, Lillies, Dill, &c.

Or use Pessaries and Fumes mentioned.

If straitness be from other diseases, cure them first.

Chap. 8. Of the opening of the Vessels of the Womb besides Nature.

**T**HIS when there is great bleeding.

*The causes.* The vessels are opened preternaturally three wayes, by *Anastomosis*, *Diarefis* and by *Diapenesis*, as in the Lungs. *Anastomosis* is from much blood which the Liver doth produce, and send out by the womb, as in some by the Nose.

For the blood being thin, hot, choleric and sharp, opens the mouths of the vessels, and causeth a flux.

*Diarefis* is from much blood, when there is great motion, as when there is long copulation with a strong man that hath a great tool, or a hard travel, or abortion, a fall or stroke; also when sharp humors corrode, or sharp pessaries,

*The Signs.* *Diarefis* is from the thinness of the vessels, and looseness and the thinness of the blood, or from much moisture, or use of Baths.

Much blood is a sign the vessels are open, you shall know the causes that open them thus: In *Anastomosis* the blood drops, and is thin, and there

Chap. 9. Of a double Womb, &c.

these are signs of much blood, or sharp and thin. If there be a *Diarefis*, the blood flows more, and there are clodders, and there were causes that broke the Vessels, as a sharp Suppositories.

*Diapenesis* is known when the woman is of a thin and loose habit of body, the blood thin, or she hath used much bathing.

If the Vessels open from much blood in a *The Prog-* found body, there is less danger: and it is easier *no sick-* cured than in a *Cacochymy*.

In an *Anastomosis* give things that thicken with *The Cure.* out slime, as *Roses*, *Mirtles*, *Medlars*, *Services*, *Pomegranate-peels* and *flowers*, *Sanders*, *Coral*, *Horn-horn*, *Cypress-nuts*.

In *Diarefis* give things that thicken with slime, *Comfrey*, *Plantans*, *Gum tragant*, *whites of Eggs*, *trebes of Amber*, *Bole*, *Starch*, *Rice*, *Quinces*, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Sarcocoll*, and *Izing-glass*.

But because there are divers causes, and these diseases are not cured but by taking them away, we shall speak of them in the Chapter of immoderate terms.

Chap. 9. Of a double Womb, the wanting of a Womb, and evil shape of the Womb, and strange things found in it.

*Plinius Obsequens* saith, that one woman had two wombs; and *Baubinus* saith, that a Maid had her womb in two parts, as in *Birches*.

*Columbus* saith, that one wanted a womb, but *Lib. 15.* her privities were as in other women, and part *anato.* of the neck of it hung out.

*Lid. de morb. mul.* *Worms in the Womb.* Hippocrates writes, that worms are found in the womb. And Gynæcea writs, it is a sign that Nature is wanton, &c. And Joen de Tornamir writes, that he saw a Woman that had an intolerable itching in her womb from the Ascarides; he gave a Womb-clyster of the Decoction of Wormwood and Hiera, and she voided many small worms, and was cured.

*An Addition.*

\* Wheresoever foul humors stop in any parts, it is no wonder if it breed worms, if other things agree which are required for the breeding of them.

*Fat and Hair found in a Womb.*

*Cont. obser. 5. obser. 49.* William Fabricius mentions, that in a dead woman the womb was taken out, and it weighed eighty-seven pounds, and was full of divers humors: in the middle there were hairs like yellow Wool.

*An Addition.*

\* This was by Magick, or a humor lay there fit to breed this strange matter by preternatural heat.

*Stones bred in the Womb.*

*Lib. 4. de morb. mul. li. r. c. 11.* Mercurialis doubts of Stones being bred in it, but thinks it is clotted blood like stones.

*Lib. 5. opid.* But it cannot be denied which many worthy Authors write. First Hippocrates writes, that a Woman of sixty, after noon always was pained as one in travel. After she had eaten many Leeks she had one fit worse than the rest, and she arose, and found something rough in the Orifice of her womb, and she fainted; and another woman

man thrust in her hand, and took out a great Stone, and the woman recovered.

Asius also saith, Hard Stones are bred in the Womb sometimes, &c. *Tetrab. 4. ferm. 4.*

Nicholas Florentine and Marcellus Donatus say c. 93. the same.

Chap. 10. Of the Magnitude of the Womb increased, and first of the Inflation of the Womb.

Inflation is a stretching of the Womb with wind: it is called by some a windy Mole. See Matthew de gradibus and Thadæus Dun, lib. Rhafis. *grad. in 9. Rhafis. nijcel. c. 8.*

This wind is from a cold matter, either thick or thin, contained in the Veins of the Womb, which overcomes the weak heat of the womb. It is gathered there by cold meats and driaks, or flows from other parts. Cold Air may be the cause also, if women that lie in expose themselves to it. This wind is contained either in the Cavities of the Vessels of the Womb, or between the Tunicles. *The causes.*

There is a swelling in the region of the womb, sometimes reaching to the Navel, Loins and Diaphragma; and as wind increaseth or decreaseth, it riseth or abateth. It is different from a Dropsie, because it is never swollen so high. And lest a Physitian be deceived, and take it for a Conception; observe the signs of women with child: for if one sign be wanting, you may suspect an Inflation. Also in Inflation the tumor increaseth and decreaseth: but in Conception it *The Signs.*

still increaseth. Moreover, if you strike upon the Belly, there is a noise, but not in Conception.

It differs from a Dropsie in the Womb: for there is no such heaviness, they move more easily, and the Belly is not so swelled, there were causes that bred wind, and things against wind do good.

2. De morb. mulier.

It differs from a Mole: for there is in that a weight and hardness in the Belly, and when they move from one side to another, they feel a weight that moveth which is not in this, of which Hippocrates. The feet and the face swell in the lower parts; the colour is bad, the terms are stoppt, there is wind, &c.

The Prog-  
nostick.

If the wind is without the cavity of the womb, there is more pain and larger, nor is there a noise, because the wind is in a straighter place.

The Cure.

It is neither a lasting nor a deadly disease, if well look'd after. If it be in the Cavity of the womb, it is easier discoussed.

Give Hiera: Diaphoenicon, with a little Castor, sharp Clysters that also expel wind. If it be in travel, purge not till she be delivered.

Bleed not, because it is from a cold matter: if it come after Child-bearing, and the terms were not sufficient after, and there is fulness of blood, open the Saphæna.

After these, give things mentioned in Tympany, that respect the womb. As, Take Conserv. of Betony, Rosemary, each an ounce and half; Candied Eryngus, Citron-peels candied, each half an ounce; Diacymium, Diagalangal, each a dram; Oyl of Aniseed, six drops, with Syrup of Citrons, make an Electuary.

Or,

Chap. 10. Of the Magnitude of the Womb increased, &c.

Or Take Conserv. of Rosemary, Balm, each three ounces; candid Citrons and Oranges, each an ounce; Diacymium a dram, with Syrup of Citrons make an Electuary.

Or give the Woman Aqua vitæ, or this: Take Asphodel roots two ounces, Masterwort, Elicampagne, Orange-peels each six drams; Calamint, Penny-royal, Sage, Rosemary, each a handful; Cummin, Fennel, Aniseed, each half an ounce; Juniper-berries a handful, Zedoary, Galangal, Cubeb, each half an ounce; with good Wine distil them, give a Spoonful or two, apply outwardly a Cataplasim of Rue, Mugwort, Chamomil, Dill, Calamint, Nip, Penny-royal, Thyme, Oyl of Rue, Cheir, Chamomil, and make Baths of Miliun, Salt, Chamomil flowers, Bayberries, Cummin, Fennel-seed, or Lay a Musther of Bayberries.

Let Clysters to expel wind be put into the womb. As, Take Calamint, Agnus castus, Rue each half an handful; Aniseeds, Costus, Cinnamon, each two drams: boil them in Wine for half a pint.

Apply a Cupping-glass with much flame to the Breast, and over against the Womb.

Use Sulphur-Baths and Spaw-waters inward and outward, for they expel wind.

If it come from cold after Child-bearing, and she is not well purged by her Terms; heat the womb, and purge, and give strong Wine.

Let the Diet be hot, cutting and attenuating, The Diet. such things that expel wind, and little at a time.

Question. Whether the Wind is in the Cavity when there is Inflation of the Womb?

It is so by Experience, though some deny it; there is no cause why wind should not be bred

bred in the womb, as well as in any other part, both by reason of the Excrements that come thither, and the natural heat that turns them into wind: these all stretch the womb (though it be thick) as in Dropsies and Conception. Also the retentive or altering faculty of the womb is never idle; so that when it receives diseased or unfruitful seed, it suffers it not to corrupt, but turns it into wind. As Hippocrates writes, *the Womb is stretched by wind from the Belly, and think they have conceived.*

Chap. II. Of the Dropsie of the Womb.

They are also deceived, and think they are with child, when there is water that swells the womb: this is a Dropsie of the womb. The water is either in the Cavity, or between the Coats of the womb, or in its Vessels. Ves. lib. 6. de corp. *Marcellus Donatus* shew that the water is in the Cavity: for it doth not presently by its pressure or quality force its passage out, because the Os uterini is not always open, and Nature gathers it in degrees, and is used to it. *Aetius* saith, There are sometimes Bladders of water in the womb. And *Christopher Vegetius* saith that *Leonora* thought that she had gone 6 months, and then voided sixty Bladders of water, and seven pieces of flesh, like that of the Spleen Membranes.

There is sometimes a Dropsie of the Womb with Conception, as *Schenstius* and *William Bricius* saith of his own wife. *Abser* 56. Are gathering of water from moistness with the terms, and from an evil Sanguification

Chap. II. Of the Dropsie of the Womb.

in the Liver and Spleen from their weakness or from errors in Diet; or from weakness of the womb, from hard travel, or often miscarriages, cold air or water, or whatsoever hurts the heat of the womb.

Also stoppage of the terms doth cause gathering of water; for the water useth to be evacuated with them. Many take this for the only cause.

Sometimes the tunicles of the womb may be divided in some place, and water may be gathered between them.

*Hippocrates* saith, the terms are fewer, and cease before the time: the bottom of the Belly swells, and the Paps are soft, without Milk, & she thinks she is with child, by these you know it is a Dropsie. *The Signs* 1. De morbo mulier.

But because Doctors and Midwives are often deceived, you must distinguish this from other Swellings.

When a woman is sound, and useth a sound man, the womb by degrees swells, and the child moves in its time; but often there is a Dropsie with Conception before or after: therefore in a Dropsie the tumor is equal, according to the largeness of the womb and belly, and not pointed as in woman with child.

Secondly, If the woman be in years, and hath not conceived before, and hath a good colour, it is a sign of a Dropsie rather than a Conception. If the tenth month be past, and the child moves not, nor the Breasts swell, but are soft, say, there is Dropsie of the womb. Thirdly, In a true Conception, women are better after some months, and the Symptoms abate: but in a Dropsie they increase still.



It is distinguished from a Mole by the weight in the bottom of the Belly.

From an inflation, because the Belly is stretched in that, and sounds being stricken: but is soft in a Dropsie.

It differs from the Dropsie of the Belly, because the Face is pale or wane, in that from the distemper of the Liver, there is thirst; but in the Womb-dropsie she is of a good colour, except the Liver be also bad.

It differs from Inflammation in the womb: for that is with a constant Fever, and the Symptoms of it, and from other tumors which are harder: but in a Dropsie of the womb, if the Belly be pressed, it yields.

You shall know whether it be from the fault in the womb principally, or from some other part, thus: If the woman be of a good colour, and there were only some diseases and causes that might hurt the womb, as abortion, hard travel, stoppage of terms, or too many of them then the womb is chiefly affected. But if there be signs of a distemper in the whole body, or in the Liver or Spleen, and the colour is bad, it is consequent from other parts.

You shall know whether the water be in Bladders, or in the Cavity of the womb, thus: If you find the Orifice of the womb closed, and there is little pain, it is in the Cavity. But if the Orifice be open, and there is great pain, it is in Bladders, or without the Cavity.

*The Prog-  
nostick.* If the humors in the womb be not corrupt, this disease is of long continuance, but may be easily cured. It is easier cured in the cavity, than when

it is in bladders, and between the tunicle. A woman after Conception having a Dropsie of the womb, her child dieth, and she is in danger.

When it is from stoppage of terms, and new, *The Cure.* and the strength firm, open a Veia in the Legs, otherwise bleed not.

Purge according to the Humor, with respect to the womb, as in Chap 6. of a cold Distemper.

Then purge Water. Take *Angelica* and *Madder-roots*, each half an ounce; *Calamints*, *Penny-royal*, *Mugwort*, *Lovage*, each a handful; *Savin* a pugil; boil them in *Vine*, and sweeten it with *Sugar*. Or make Broaths with the same. Take *Dianisum*, *Diagalangal*, each half a dram; oyl of *Aniseeds*, *Cloves*, each five drops; *Sugar* three ounces, make *Rolls*.

Inject into the Womb as in Dropsies. Take *Marum-roots* three drams, *Penny-royal*, *Calamints*, each half a handful; *Savin* a pugil. *Mechoacan* a dram, *Aniseed*, *Cummin*, each half a dram: boil them, and take six ounces strained; Oyl of *Elder* and *Orris*, each an ounce: make a *Clyster*. Or use *Pellaries*. Take *Agrick* a dram, *Coloquintida* half a dram, *Guidium* ten grains, with *Honey* and *Wool* make a *Pessary*.

Make Fomentations and Baths of *Danewort*, *Mercury*, *Elder*, *Pennyroyal* O:gain, *Chamomil*, *flower*, *Bayberries*, wild *Cowcumbert*, *Broom*, *Carror*, *Rue-seed*. And anoint after with Oyl of *Elder*, *Danewort*, *Orris*, with drops of Oyl of *Angelica*, *Anise*, *Caraway*.

*Sulphur* Baths are good, and those of *Niter*, or the *Paister* of *Bayberries*, or *Snails* to the bottom of the Belly. Vomiting and *Neefing* break the bladders. Give *Clysters* at the *Fundament* as in Dropsies. Take *Mercury* leaves, *Danewort*, *Sol-dan:ls*,

*danella, Mugwort, Motherwort, each a handful; Camomil, Elder, Broom-flowers, each a dram: boil them in water to ten ounces strained, and juyce of Beets, Mercury, Danewort, each six drams; boys urin an ounce and half; Hiera six drams, Hony half an ounce, make a Choller.*

Let the Dyet be drying, as in Chap. 5.

Chap. 12. Of the Tumor in the Womb, from Blood in the Veins.

**T**His Disease makes women think they are with child also. For blood long detained in the Veins about the womb, stretcheth them outwardly, and twisteth them, and the Veins in the substance of the womb are full and stretched, and make it larger. But when the terms flow, it falls again, except there be a Cachexy or Dropsie.

This is only from stoppage of Terms, and is cured by provoking them.

Chap. 13. Of Inflammation of the Womb.

**I**F the blood that comes to the womb, get out of the Vessels into its substance, and grow hot and putrifie, it causeth Inflammation, either all over, or in part, before or behind, above or below, on the right or left side.

*The causes.* Blood is the immediate Cause. which is pure or mixed; therefore the Inflammation is either an Erysipelas, Oedema or Scirrhus, as Flegm, Melancholy, or Blood abound. Blood is either sent to, or drawn by the womb. By heat or pain it is sent to it, when it aboundeth: or it is hot or thin, and when the blood is moved by hot Air, Exercise, Passions, anger or hot diet.

*The Signs.* There is a tumor with heat and pain in the region of the womb, with stretching and heaviness in the Privities; and if you put in your fingers, you'll

Chap. 13. Of Inflammation of the Womb.

you'll feel the heat, and the more pain; there is a feaver, sometimes called *Zappra*, when there is cold without, and heat within. The Tongue is dry and black, with watching, doting, tossing to and fro, the breasts are puffed up and pained. There is head-ach to the roots of the eyes, and a pain in the groyns, hips, midrif, pleura and shoulders: short wind, and like a Pleurisie, with loathing, vomiting, hickets. The belly is bound, the pulse is small, and often and weak, but at first darting and quick. And Hippocrates saith, *If the womb be inflamed, the terms are stoppt, and the neck of it is like a spiders web, with many small veins, &c.*

If it be inflamed before, the pain is about the pubes, and the uria is stoppt. If behind, it is in the loyns, and the belly is bound. If it be inflamed in the bottom, the pain is towards the navel. If it be from pure blood the Symptoms are less: if from choler, stronger: the thirst is more, the watching greater; if from melancholy, all are worse.

If it be all over the womb, it is dangerous, and few escape it. An Erysipelas in a woman with child is deadly, because there is an abortion, and the Mother dies: the worse the Symptoms, the greater is the danger. And it is safer to discuss an inflammation then to ripen it: if it turn to a Schirrus, it is lasting, and makes a Dropsie.

If it be not after abortion or a flux of blood, open a vein in the Arm, or cup and sacrifice the shoulders. Bleed not in the foot, lest you draw blood more to the womb; but afterwards to derive, if it be from terms stoppt, you may. Galen Gal. 2. ad saith, *You may divert the blood by bleeding in the arm, or Cupping the breasts, and you may derive it by opening the ankle-vein, and cupping upon the hips.*

If

If there be choler, purge it with Syrup of Roses, Manna, Raubarb, Diacatholicon; and use not froag movers of the Terms.

Use Alterers and Coolers, as Juleps and Emulsions, and provoke sleep; and if there be dotage give Narcoticks.

After the Universals use Repellers and Anodins, As, Take *Housleek*, *Purflane*, *Lettice*, *Venus-navel*, *Vine-leaves*, each half a handful; boyl them in wine, add *Barly-meal* two ounces, *Pomegranate-flowers* two drams, boyl a dram, with *Oyl of Roses*, make a Pultis. Or, Take *Diachylon simple* two ounces, *Juyce of Venus-navel* and *Plantane*, each half an ounce; *Oyl of Roses* an ounce, *Sugar of Led* a dram, make an Ojunt in a leaden Mortar.

Make Injections of the same Herbs, or of Milk, and Rose-water. Or, Take *Plantane*, *Venus-navel*, *lettice*, each a handful; *red Roses* two pugils, boyl and add *Oyl of Mirtils* an ounce, *Rose-vinegar* half an ounce, make an Injection.

Make Clysters of the same Plants in a small quantity, lest they oppress in the womb.

Take *Alibæa-roots* an ounce, *Mallows*, *Violets*, *lettice*, each a handful; *Nightshade* half a handful, *Violets*, *Roses*, each a pugil; *sweet Prunes* ten, *Linseed* half a dram, boyl them in *Barly-water*, to six ounces, add *Oyl of Roses* three ounces, make a Clyster.

An anodine Fomentation. Take roots of *Alibæa*, *Mallows*, and *Violets*, each a handful; *red Roses*, *Melilot*, *Chamomil-flowers*, each a pugil; boyl them for a Fomentation.

Or use a Cataplasim of White Bread and Milk.

In the progress discuss. As, Take *Powder of Alibæa-roots* an ounce, *Chamomil* and *Melilot-flowers*, each two drams; *Mugwort* half an ounce, *Barly* and

## Chap. 14. Of Scirrhus and Cancer in the Womb.

and *Beansflour*, each an ounce; boyl them in sharp wine, add *Hogs-grease*, *Oyl of Chamomil* and *Lillies* each an ounce; make a Cataplasim.

If the inflammation turn to matter, ripen it. As Take *powder of Alibæa-roots*, *Chamomil-flowers*, *Melilot*, *Linseed*, *Fœnugreek*, each an ounce; *Figs* eight, boyl them, and yaks of four Eggs, and half a scruple of *Saffron*, make a Pultis.

After it is ripe, break it by motion of the body, coughing, heesing, cupping, or by Pessaries. As, Take *Figs* an ounce, *Rue* half a handful, boyl them soft, add *Honey* and *Leaven*, each half an ounce *Pigrons dung*, *Orris-roots*, each half a dram; with wool make a Pessary.

After it is broken, the pain abatés, then cleanse and heal the ulcer, as in Sect. 1. c. 8. of an ulcer of the womb. If it break about the bladder, give an Emulsion of cold Seeds, Whey, and Syrup of Violets.

Let the diet be cool, with Barley-water warm. Abstain from Wine; to the declination of the disease, let the belly still be kept loose.

## Chap. 14. Of a Scirrhus and Cancer in the Womb.

A earthy matter left after an inflammation, makes a hard tumor, called a Scirrhus, and sometimes it is without an Inflammation. It is a proper Scirrhus when there is neither sence nor pain; it is improper when there is a little sence. It is sometimes as big as a mans head; sometimes the whole womb is a Scirrhus, sometimes only part of it.

The immediate Cause, is a thick earthy humor, as natural melancholy, when a thick humor

Paras l.  
23. c. 35

The causes.  
mor

mor is gathered in the womb, there is Scirrhus without inflammation foregoing; this is usual in melancholy women, and such as are not cleansed by their terms. or have the Pica or green-sickness, and are fifty years old.

Other humors sometimes breed a Scirrhus after inflammation, when cold astringents have been used disorderly: or when the humor is fixed to the part and hardened. The same may be from hot discussers, which send forth the thin matter in an inflammation, and fasten the thick.

**The Signs.** The tumor is to be felt. it yields not, and is without pain, the terms flow not at first, or very little, & afterwards there is a great flux of blood, If an inflammation went before, and the part is heavy and burthened, it is a Sign of a Scirrhus. She is unweeldy, sloathful; and you may know from what humor it is, by the signs of the humors predominating in the body, and the part pained will shew you in what place it is.

**The Prognostick.** A Scirrhus easily turns to a Cancer. And when the terms are stop't, there is a Drop sic of the womb or belly, It is easier cured in the neck than in the womb it self.

**The Cure.** Moistn and heat the cold and dry humor, with Borage, Bugloss, Fumitory, Succory, Epithimum, Polypody. Then purge with Polypody, Senna, black Hellebore, and the like. As, Take roots of *Alibæa*, Lillies; each two ounces; Mallows Violets, *Alibæa*, Brank-ursine, each a handful; Mugwort, Calamints, Chamomil-flowers, each half a handful; Fœnugreek and Linseed, each half an ounce; boyl them for a Fomentation, or Bath or to a Cataplasm, with Linseed, Fœnugreek, each an ounce; Figs six, Orris-powder two drams, Saffron half a dram, Hens-grease

Chap 15. Of the displacing of the Womb, &c.

grease and Oyl of sweet Almonds as much as is fit.

Or, Take Bdelium, Ammoniacum, Galbanum, each as much as you please: beat them in a Mortar, with Oyl de Been and Lillies, and Mucilage of Fœnugreek, Linseed, Figs, make a Liniment, or with Wax & Plaister.

Or. Take Oyl of Capers, Lillies, sweet Almonds, Fsamine, each an ounce; fresh Butter, Hens-grease, Goose-grease, each half an ounce; Mucilage of Fœnugreek, *Alibæa*, and Oyniment of *Alibæa*, each six drams; Ammoniacum dissolved in Wine an ounce, with Wax make an Oyniment.

Make Injections thus: Take Bdelium dissolved in wine, Oyl of sweet Almonds, Lillies, Chamomil, each two ounces; marrow of a Veil-bone, Hens-grease each an ounce; with the Yelk of an Egg.

In a bastard Scirrhus, you may use Healers and Digesters better, and Ammoniacum, and hotter Fats.

Internal Medicines, are Steel, &c. of which in Obstruction of the Womb, and Scirrhus of the Spleen.

As for Diet, abstain from breeders of gross and slimy humors, and from hot dryers.

*Cancer of the Womb.*

What may be said of this, is said before, only a Cancer may seize upon the substance of the womb, but it is more usually in the neck of it.

Chap. 15. Of the displacing of the Womb, and first of the Ascent of it.

When the womb falls out of the Privities, it is called *Procidencia ueri*; this is ordinary. But the ascent or going up of the womb is more

*Eustach.* more unkind. Many grave Anatomists hold  
*rud. lib. 2.* That the womb doth ascend, if sweet things are  
*pract. c. 5.* applied to the Nose. If to the Privities, that it  
 descends. If stinking Scents come, the womb  
 flies from them, and it is to be seen by breathing  
 altered, and by some meats that the womb greedily  
 desires, and catcheth up.

*6. De lo. off. c. 5.* *Galen* overthroweth this opinion, and saith, that  
 the womb doth move after a sort, and ascend but  
 it is very little, and not to be demonstrated, Nor  
 can it arise to the Stomach, it is tied with such  
 strong Ligaments to its place; and when it falls  
 out, the Ligaments are extended by moisture, and  
 falling of it down. And there is no reason why  
 the Ligaments, though loose or wet, it should  
 goup so speedily, and come down again. For  
 falling down is by degrees, and it is not soon  
 brought up again. And though it be enlarged  
 in Conception, it is by degrees and equally, not  
 suddenly in one fit. Nor is the Ligaments  
 made very loose in Conception, and the bottom  
 of the womb is not tied, the Ligaments being  
 only on the sides.

But this cannot be denied, which women affirm,  
 that they feel a body or ball moving about  
 the Navel, and a Physician or Midwife may feel  
 it. Therefore let us inquire what it is, if it be  
 not a womb. That Body which you may feel fir,  
 is the Stones, and that bliad Vessels which *Fallop-*  
*pius* found out, which he compared to the great  
 end of a Trumpet, called *Fallopian* his Trumpet.  
 For the Stones hang, and the body of the Trumpet  
 is like a Pipe, loose and moving; and when  
 they are full and swell with corrupt Seed and Va-  
 pors, they move to and fro, and ascend as high

as the navel. And the stones with the Trompet  
 make this round tumor of the womb, which is  
 felt in women, as *Riolanus* observes.

Whatsoever makes corrupt seed in the stones  
 of a woman, and fills them with evil vapors, or  
 wind, is the cause: of which in suffocation of the  
 womb. For the cause is like in both, only in suffo-  
 cation the Symptoms are worse, because the evil  
 vapors are then more freely carried by the veins,  
 arteries and nerves, afflict the principal part.

The woman and others may feel a round bo-  
 dy, and she findeth a pain at her heart, and short  
 breath without sleeping or doring, or other  
 Symptoms, and there were causes that disturb-  
 ed the womb.

It is not dangerous, yet not to be slighted: for  
 it may turn to the strangling of the womb, when  
 these evil vapors move to the noble parts.

Let the aim be at the corrupt seed, and vapors  
 which must be discutied and evacuated, as in suf-  
 focation of the womb.

Chap. 16. *Of falling out of the Womb.*

Sometimes it falls to the middle of the thighs,  
 or to the knees almost, or hangs a little out.  
 The womb changeth its place, when the liga-  
 ments by which it is bound to the other parts  
 are not in order. There are four, two above  
 board and membranous that come from the Pe-  
 titonæum, and two below that are nervous,  
 round and hollow. Besides, it is bound to the  
 great vessels by veins and arteries, and to the  
 back by nerves.

Now

*Antropogo. lib. 2. c. 34. The Causes.*

*The Signs.*

*The Prog- nostick.*

*The Cure.*

*The Cause.*

Now the place is changed when it is down another way, or when the ligaments are loose, and it falls down by its own weight. It is drawn on one side, when the terms are stoppt, and the veins and arteries are full, those namely which go to the womb: if it be a mole on the one side the liver and spleen cause it, by the liver-veins on the right side, or the Spleen on the left, as they are filled more or less.

It also falls down by the loosning of the parts, to which it is fastened: but how that can be, it is not clear.

1. 2. De  
morb. mul-  
lier.

Hippocrates saith, It comes from external causes, as from cold of the feet or loins; from leaping or fear, cutting of wood, or running down a hill, and the like, these make the ligaments moist and loose. Also it may be from cold after child-bearing getting into the womb when the terms flow, sitting upon a cold stone, and the like.

Platerus.

Others say, it comes from the solution of the connexion of the fibrous neck, and the parts adjacent, and that is from the weight of the womb descending: this we deny not. But then the ligaments must be loose or broken. But women in a dropsie could not be said to have the womb fall down, if it came only from looseness. But the cause in them is the saltness of the water which dries more then it moisteneth.

The Signs.

If there be a little tumor within or without the privities, like a skin stretched, or a weight felt about the privities, it is only a descent of the womb: but if there be a tumor like a Goose-egg, and a hole at the bottom, there is at first a great pain in the parts to which the womb is fastned, as the loins, the bottom of the belly, and the privities, and the *Os sacrum*, from the stretching or breaking

breaking of the ligaments; but a little after the pain abateth, and there is an impediment in walking. Sometimes blood comes forth from the breach of the vessels, and the Dung and Urine are stoppt, and a Feaver and Convulsion.

When it is near, it is easily cured; when old, it is hard to be cured, but not deadly, only it is troublesome and nasty. It hinders conception, and keeps terms from flowing orderly. If it be with pain, Feaver or Convulsion, it is deadly especially in Women with Child. That which comes from corrosion of the ligaments, is dangerous.

First put it up before the air alter it, or it be inflamed or swollen. Therefore first give a Clyster to remove the excrements. Then lay her upon her back with her legs abroad, and thighs lifted up, her head down, and take the tumor in your hands, and thrust it in without violence.

If it be swollen by alteration and cold, soment it with the Decoction of Mallows, Althæa, Line, Fenugreek-seed, Chamomil-flowers, Bayberries: and anoint it with Oyl of Lillies and Hens-grease. If there be an inflammation, put it not up, yet it may be frighted in, by shewing of red hot iron, and acting as if you would burn it.

First, sprinkle upon it the powder of Mastich, Frankincence, and the like. As, Take Frankincense, Mastich, each two drams; Sarcocol steeped in Milk a dram, Mummy, Pomegranate-flowers, Sanguis Draconis, each half a dram.

When it is put up, let her lie with her legs stretched, and one upon the other, for eight or ten dayes, and make a Pessary like a Pear, of Cork or Sponge put into the womb, dipt in sharp wine or juice of Acacia, with powder of Sanguis Draconis, Bole, Mastich, or the Countesses Oyntment

ment, with Galbanum and Bdellium.

Apply a Cupping-glass with great flame under the Navel or paps, or to both kidneys, and lay this Plaister to the back. Take Opopanax two ounces, Storax liquid half an ounce, Frankincense, Mastich, Pitch, Bole, each two drams; with Wax make a Plaister. Or,

Take Labdanum a dram and half, Frankincense, Mastich, each half a dram; wood Aloes, Cleves, Spike, each a dram; Ash coloured Amber-greece four grains, Musk half a scruple, make two round Plaisters to be laid on each side the Navel. Make a Fume of a Snail skin salted, or of Garlick, and let it be taken in by a funnel.

Use astringent Fomentations of Bramble leave, Plantane, Horsetails, Mirtles, each two handfuls, Wormwood two pugils, Pomgranate flowers half an ounce, boil them in wine and water: Or inject this with a syringe. Take Comfrey Roots, an ounce, Snake-weed, Pomgranate-flowers, each half an ounce; Rapture wort two drams, Tarrow, Mugwort, each half an ounce; boil them in red Wine. Then use Sulphur Balls.

To strengthen the womb: Take Harts-horn, Bayes, each a dram; Mirrh half a dram; make a powder for two doses: give it with sharp Wine. Or, Take Zedoary, Parsnep-seeds, Crabs-eyes prepared, each a dram; Nutmeg half a dram: give a dram in powder: but use astringents warily, lest you stop the couries, and cause worse mischief.

If it fall out from evil humors that flow to the womb, and loosen the ligaments, purge the Body, and then use dryers, as the decoction of China, Sarsa, and Guaiacum.

To keep it in its place make Roulers and Ligatures, as for the Rupture, and use Pessaries in-

to the bottom of the womb, that may force it to remain: Of which Francis Rousset hath written at large, and shews that they neither hinder Conception, nor bring any inconvenience; nay, that they help Conception, and retain it, and cure this disease perfectly. And Gaspar Bauhinus confirms the same in his appendix to Rousset.

You may use Circles of Balls: instead of Pessaries, As, Take roots of wild Vine, make round Circles or Balls of them greater or less, as the neck of the womb is. Then, take Virgins Wax melted with white Rosin or Turpentine, dip the balls in till they are fit, put one in the neck of the womb, that will hold in being just fit: let it not be taken out till it fall out, and then put in another, if she be not cured.

If it gangreen and sphacelate, cut it quite off; if the fear cutting, take it off by Ligatures, of which Rousset, who shews the way, and saith that it may be cut off without danger of life. He tells also of the place where you must cut, and in Sect. 4. de partu Casario, where the Ligature is to be made.

Let the diet be drying and astringent, and giveing Rice, Starch, Quinces, Pears, green-Cheese, and Summer-fruits: Let the Wine be astringent and red.

#### The cure of the inclining of the Womb.

When it inclines to the sides after Universals, apply Cupping glasses to the other side, and let her still lie on the other side; and let the Midwife anoint her finger with Oyl of sweet Almonds, and draw it a little by degrees to the other side.

Lib. de par-  
tu Casar.  
sect. 6. cap.  
3. & 4.

Lib. de par-  
tu Cas. sect.  
4. cap. 5.  
hist. 6. ibid.  
sect. 4. cap. 5.

## Chap. 17. Of the Rupture of the Womb.

Few Physicians have seen this, I never read of any; but once I saw it, of which in my institutions, *lib. 2. part. 1. cap. 9.*

## Chap. 18. Of Wounds, and breaking of the Womb.

*The Signs.* IT is seldom wounded, by reason of the divers defences it hath; but sometimes the Chyrurgions wound it in cutting out of the Child: of which *Hollerius, inter rara no. 8.* He speaks of a woman with Child in *Paris*, that her child's hand put forth at the Navel, and was so in travel 15 days, and both child and mother were safe.

*The Prognostick.* It is evident if it be made by the Chyrurgion in cutting out of a Child; and you may know it by the place, if it come otherwise. There is blood and matter that flow out at the neck of the womb. There is more pain when it is in the neck of the womb, then when it is in the bottom.

These wounds are cured, as appears by the Cæsarian Birth or cutting: but they are dangerous by reason of the strange Symptoms, and the consent of the parts.

Use Consolidates or Healers: and if there be pain, Anodines or Pessaries made of Waxcandles dip't in Wound-Oyntments. Or,

Take Wax, Turpentine, Goose grease, Butter, each a Dram; Honey, Deers-marrow, Oyl of Roses, Bulls-grease, each two drams. Or, Take, Frankincense,

Chap. 20. Of the Diseases of the Stone, &c. 55  
 Essence, Mastick, Cerusi, Galbanum, each half an ounce: mix them all with white Wine, then add. *Zampbolix* an ounce, and with Wax and Oyl of *Roses*, make an Oyntment.

Make Injections or Clysters for the womb, of the Decoction of round Brithwrot, Cypress boiled in steeled Water, and sharp Wine, with a little Hydromel, Agrimony, Mugwort, Plantane, Roles, Schananth, Horehound.

## Chap. 19. Of Ulcers and Rottenness of the Womb.

THOUGH the neck of the womb be only subject to Ulcers as we shewed; yet the substance of the Womb hath been ulcerated, and it hath been observed to rot, when it hath fallen out, and to fall away. As we said of a Woman at *Avinion*, that after lived some time. And the Examples of *Roussel* shew, that it may be safely cut off.

Also a Child dead in the womb, may cause an Ulcer, and divers Histories witness in *Abucasis, Caesar, chir* and *Alexander Benedictus, Mawritius, Cordus*, and many other. *Lib. de part c. 75.*

How these Ulcers and Rottenness of the womb are cured, is said in *sect. 1. cap. 8.* where we speak of Ulcers of the neck of the womb; and *cap. 10.* of Fistulae of the Womb.

## Chap. 20. Of the Diseases of the Stones, and Vessels of Procreation in Women.

IT is apparent by Histories written by grave and learned Men, that the Stones of Women

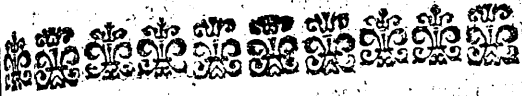


In apprend.  
ad Rousse-  
tum 2. de  
partu Cesar.

and their Seed-vessels are many times grievously distempered, when the womb joynd to them is not. Sometimes water is gathered about the stones, as *Gasper Bauhinus*, *John Sebenkins* write, and he hath another History; *Lib. Obser. 3.* from *John Heintz*, of a Maid that desired a little before she died, that her body might be opened, to restifie her innocency. In which, besides other things remarkable, the stones were found swollen as big as a head of a young Child; blewish and spongy, much water came out of them, and that made her Belly swell, and she taken to be with child: but the truth appeared, and her Chastity testified.

*lib. 1. cap. 12.* *lib. 2. cap. 12.* *lib. 3. cap. 12.* *lib. 4. cap. 12.* *lib. 5. cap. 12.* *lib. 6. cap. 12.* *lib. 7. cap. 12.* *lib. 8. cap. 12.* *lib. 9. cap. 12.* *lib. 10. cap. 12.* *lib. 11. cap. 12.* *lib. 12. cap. 12.* *lib. 13. cap. 12.* *lib. 14. cap. 12.* *lib. 15. cap. 12.* *lib. 16. cap. 12.* *lib. 17. cap. 12.* *lib. 18. cap. 12.* *lib. 19. cap. 12.* *lib. 20. cap. 12.* *lib. 21. cap. 12.* *lib. 22. cap. 12.* *lib. 23. cap. 12.* *lib. 24. cap. 12.* *lib. 25. cap. 12.* *lib. 26. cap. 12.* *lib. 27. cap. 12.* *lib. 28. cap. 12.* *lib. 29. cap. 12.* *lib. 30. cap. 12.* *lib. 31. cap. 12.* *lib. 32. cap. 12.* *lib. 33. cap. 12.* *lib. 34. cap. 12.* *lib. 35. cap. 12.* *lib. 36. cap. 12.* *lib. 37. cap. 12.* *lib. 38. cap. 12.* *lib. 39. cap. 12.* *lib. 40. cap. 12.* *lib. 41. cap. 12.* *lib. 42. cap. 12.* *lib. 43. cap. 12.* *lib. 44. cap. 12.* *lib. 45. cap. 12.* *lib. 46. cap. 12.* *lib. 47. cap. 12.* *lib. 48. cap. 12.* *lib. 49. cap. 12.* *lib. 50. cap. 12.* *lib. 51. cap. 12.* *lib. 52. cap. 12.* *lib. 53. cap. 12.* *lib. 54. cap. 12.* *lib. 55. cap. 12.* *lib. 56. cap. 12.* *lib. 57. cap. 12.* *lib. 58. cap. 12.* *lib. 59. cap. 12.* *lib. 60. cap. 12.* *lib. 61. cap. 12.* *lib. 62. cap. 12.* *lib. 63. cap. 12.* *lib. 64. cap. 12.* *lib. 65. cap. 12.* *lib. 66. cap. 12.* *lib. 67. cap. 12.* *lib. 68. cap. 12.* *lib. 69. cap. 12.* *lib. 70. cap. 12.* *lib. 71. cap. 12.* *lib. 72. cap. 12.* *lib. 73. cap. 12.* *lib. 74. cap. 12.* *lib. 75. cap. 12.* *lib. 76. cap. 12.* *lib. 77. cap. 12.* *lib. 78. cap. 12.* *lib. 79. cap. 12.* *lib. 80. cap. 12.* *lib. 81. cap. 12.* *lib. 82. cap. 12.* *lib. 83. cap. 12.* *lib. 84. cap. 12.* *lib. 85. cap. 12.* *lib. 86. cap. 12.* *lib. 87. cap. 12.* *lib. 88. cap. 12.* *lib. 89. cap. 12.* *lib. 90. cap. 12.* *lib. 91. cap. 12.* *lib. 92. cap. 12.* *lib. 93. cap. 12.* *lib. 94. cap. 12.* *lib. 95. cap. 12.* *lib. 96. cap. 12.* *lib. 97. cap. 12.* *lib. 98. cap. 12.* *lib. 99. cap. 12.* *lib. 100. cap. 12.*

T. H. F.



THE  
FOURTH BOOK.

THE  
SECOND PART.

Of the Symptoms in the  
Womb and from the  
Womb.

Chap. I. Of Weakness in the  
Womb.

There are many Symptoms from the Womb. Of those in the Womb: the first is weakness; so that it cannot perform its actions. The action of the Womb is twofold: private and publick. By its private action, it makes its nourishment of blood that comes to it. By

By its publick action it serves for generation. If the private faculty be hurt, and the nourishment not well made, there is a superfluous moisture, and then weaknes without other faults of the Organ or unity divided.

**The Causes.** The first cause is distemper, when the manifest qualities are changed, or when the natural heat is suffocated or dispersed; or when the occult qualities are changed. Heat in the womb makes a distemper if it be too much, by which the womb sucks more than it can concoct; this is not properly weaknes: but that distemper is weaknes, when the action is either not done, or weakly done. But cold rather makes weaknes in the womb, by which it cannot make the sufficient quantity of nourishment, hence excrements are heaped up, and it cannot perform its actions. Also a moist distemper makes weaknes, by which it neither can keep Seed nor Child. It is also weak from looseness.

**The Signs.** Little desire of Venery, and no pleasure therein, argue weaknes of the womb, flux of Seed, often abortion, pain in the Loins and Pubes, when the Terms are coming, farts from the womb, Head-ach and the like.

**The Prognostick.** The signs of a cold and moist distemper with or without matter are already declared. It is a great disease, by reason of the diverse Symptoms in women that have conception hurt. It is worst when it comes from dispersing and extinguishing of the natural heat.

**The cure.** We have shewed how distempers of the womb are cured: but the dispersing of the Spirits and natural heat is cured by things that hinder the loss of Spirits, and strengthen the womb, as Spices, Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmeg, Mace, Diac-

laminth,

laminth, Aromaticum rosatum, Diacilaloes, rosata Novella, Treacle, Michridate. Outwardly by Oyl of Lillies, Nard, Lavender: and Astringents when the womb is loose.

Things that help the womb in the whole substance, are in the Chapter of the cold and moist Distemper, as Aqua vitæ for Women. Or thus, Take Castor three ounces, Saffron two ounces, extract them singular, add to both Extract of Mugwort two ounces, of Angelica a dram, Magistery of the mother of Pearl a dram, Oyl of Cloves a scruple, of Angelica, and of Amber, and of Nutmegs, each half a scruple.

Let her eat meat of much nourishment, and drink good Wine.

Chap. 2. Of the Itch of the Womb.

**T**his is more in old then young women, and must be distinguished from the Frenzy of the womb: for here is only a desire to scratch the Privities, so that they cannot sleep, Nor is it with desire of Copulation, as in the Fury of the womb.

It is a salt humour that is serous and adust that causeth it, that is sent to the neck of the womb, and the privities. How it comes there, I shewed in Ulcers of the Privities.

It is known by her Relation, and often putting her hand to the Privities.

It is more troublesome then dangerous, because it hinders sleep.

First, purge the whole Body, and if there are

**The Prognostick.**  
signs  
**The Cure.**

fings of Plethory, and strength permits, bleed in the Arm. Then qualifie the sharp salt humours with cold and moist means, and remove them from the Privities. Foment with a Decoction of Lettice, Plantane, Willow, Dock-roots; and then anoint with Galen's Cooler. Or dip a Pessary in this Ointment, and put it in. Or, Take *Allum, Niter, Sulphur, each six drams; Staphisagere an ounce, with Rose-vinager and fresh Butter, make a Liniment.*

If these will not cure, use stronger, as the Oyntment of Elicampane with Quick-silver. Or Take *black Sope, Stavisacre, each a dram; quick-Brimstone half an ounce, Quick-silver 2 drams, with Rose-vinegar, and Hens-grease, make an oymment.*

Let the meat be of good juice, cooling, and moistening. Take heed of Spices, sharp and salt meats.

### Chap, 3 Of Pain in the Womb.

There is pain in the body of the womb, with other Diseases sometimes, as the Collick-pains woven in the bottom of the Belly, and in the Loins and Hips; and is called the pain of the Womb. It is often in women with Child, as the inflammation of the womb. It is burning and beating, it binds the Belly, and stops the Urine.

*The Causes.* Solution of unity is the cause of all pains: and this is from the stretching of the womb and its Vessels or corrosion. Stretching it from wind, clotted blood in the Cavity of it, and when Nature cannot expel it by reason of the straitness of the part, there is pain.

Also pain is from stretching of the vessels before

### Chap. 3. Of the pain in the Womb.

fore the terms flow, when they are close, and the blood thick, and this pain is encreased by external cold, especially after heat. Sometimes there is a gathering of humors about the Womb, when the terms flow and are foul, and they get into the membranes and stretch them. The same may be from corrupt Seed, that stretcheth the Vessels.

Or from sharpness and corrosion in the neck of the Womb, when sharp humours flow through it, and twitch it. *The Signs*

The pain is manifest, but let us look at the signs of the causes. If it be from clotted blood, there was a flux of the same, and the pain is fixed about the orifice of the womb. If there were external causes, the patient will relate. If it be from Seed, there is suffocation of the womb.

The greater the cause is, and the more vehement it works, the more is the danger. *The Prog-*

If there be a pain, and fear of fainting, look to that before the cause, with Anodynes and Narcotics if need be. *stick. The Cure.*

If it be from wind, see inflation of the womb.

If it be from clotted blood, dissolve and evacuate it, with hot and attenuating Medicines, made into Fomentations, Baths and Oyntments. It is good to apply Treacle to the Region of the Womb, or put it in with Rue and Honey. Or give a Clyster to the womb of Rue, Fenugreek-seed, and Oyl of Rue and Orris. Or give Treacle and Cinnamon-water.

If the vessels of the womb are not open enough for the terms, See in the stoppage of terms.

If there be wind make a Clyster thus: Take *Mercury, Mugwort, Calamints, Peny-royal, each a handful; Camomil and Melilot-flowers, each half a hand-*

handful; Fenugreek and Linseed, each an ounce; boyl them; in a pint strained, dissolve *Hiera, Benedicta laxativa*, each half an ounce; make a Clyster. Give Mugwort, Zedoary-water, Essence of Castor, Treacle, or Womans Aqua vita, of which before.

Make a Clyster for the womb, thus; Take Mugwort, Calamints, Bettony, each half a handful; Gith, Cummin, Carrot, Aniseeds each a dram; Spike, Scœnanth, Nutmeg, Cinnamon, each a dram; boyl them in Wine.

Then fill an Ox bladder half full with Oyl of Lillies and Dill, and apply it to the Belly.

Or, Take Oyl of Lillies, Orris, each an ounce; distilled Oyl of Angelica a dram, Goose and Hens grease, each half an ounce; Mucilage of Line and Fenugreek-seed made with Mugwort-water, each three drams; seeds of Cummin, Carrots, Caraway, each a dram; with Wax make a soft Oyntment. Or Take Pellitory two handfuls, Mercury a handful, beat them, add Chamomil-flowers, Cummin, Anise, Carrot-seeds, each a dram; two yelks of Eggs and Oyl of Lillies, make a Cataplasin for the Belly.

Apply Plaisters to the Navil, and Cupping-glasses with great flame to the Region of the womb; or dry Fomentations of Oats, Millium, Anise, Cummin, Carrot-seed in a Bag. And use Pessaries, as, Take Harts Marrow, Turpentine, Wax, Goose-greese, each three drams; Saffron a dram, yelks of Eggs seven, with Oyl of Lillies, take Pessaries.

If the humors and wind is malignant. mix Scorzonera, Bezoar seeds, and roots of Angelica, water of Zedoary, Treacle, Mithridate, and the like in suffocation of the womb.

Chap.

### Chap. 4. Of the Diseases of the Womb, that come from sweet scents and stinks.

Here is a particular Symptom in the womb which breeds great admiration, that it delights in sweet scents, and is offended with stinks, And it is certain: for if Musk, Civit, or the like, be but put to the nose of the women that is subject to fits of the Mother, they grow sick; and if the same be put to their privities, and stinks to the nose, the fit of the Mother ceaseth.

It is hard to give the reason of this, many wise Men have given their opinion: but they disagree among themselves, and satisfie me not, neither do I promise to satisfie others: But it is probable to me, that the womb is not delighted with scents, as scents: for the privities have no smelling, and the sense of smelling doth not reach so far: but the quality by which it is well or ill, is occult and not to be explained, and to be separated from the odours.

If any ask what the quality is, I answer, There are many qualities in Nature that are hid from our senses, and yet we cannot deny them, because we see their effects, as the quality in a Dogs Nose, we cannot apprehend, but the Dog perceives it.

But how these qualities come to the womb, is by no other way but by the open way by the privities, by which Spirits get into the womb, and in the suffocation of the womb sweet things profit,

*Quomodo  
uterus bene  
olentia re-  
cipiat.*

*Quomodo  
bene olentia  
hystericis  
noceant.*

fit, because they strengthen it by a peculiar quality to disperse the venemous air, and draw down the spirits and humours. But if they be put to the Nose, the womb consents by the Sympathy of the organ of smelling, and the brain with it.

This is by the Nerves and Arteries, for the heart is presently refreshed with a sweet scent, because it presently pierceth into it being spiritual, and there is a great consent of the womb with the brain and the smelling, as is seen by the trial of barrenness, by a Fume from *Hippocrates*.

*Æ. Aphor.*

But we must observe, that sweet scents are acceptable to all wombs, and stinks are not, but the same symptoms are not in all Women from them; for they who have a womb of a good Constitution with no evil humors in it, endure sweet things well and delight in them, but they who are unclean hate sweet things, and often fall into fits by them, because while the womb is delighted with that sweet and hidden quality with which it hath a peculiar Sympathy, the evil humors that lie in the Womb (especially if there be any corruption from Seed) and the Seed also are stirred, and when the Spirits flie up, they take the bad humours with them, and send bad vapors to the heart which cause suffocation, and other Symptoms. But when the same scents are put to the privities, the womb is refreshed with them, and the Spirits are quiet, to move to the scents. And so the humours (if there be any) are still, or else move downward. But stinks on the contrary by reason of their Antipathy with the womb avoided by the Spirits, and so the humours move downward, and often there is an abortion thereby.

What

What is spoken of sweet Scents, may be understood of all sweet things, and this is our Judgement in a matter so difficult.

FF

THE

*Quomodo  
bene olentia  
hystericis  
noceant.*

fit, because they strengthen it by a peculiar quality to disperse the venemous air, and draw down the spirits and humours. But if they be put to the Nose, the womb consents by the Sympathy of the organ of smelling, and the brain with it.

This is by the Nerves and Arteries, for the heart is presently refreshed with a sweet scent, because it presently pierceth into it being spiritual, and there is a great consent of the womb with the brain and the smelling, as is seen by the tryal of barrenness, by a Fume from *Hippocrates*.

*§. Aphor.*

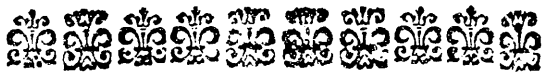
But we must observe, that sweet scents are acceptable to all wombs, and stinks are not, but the same symptoms are not in all Women from them; for they who have a womb of a good Constitution with no evil humors in it, endure sweet things well and delight in them, but they who are unclean hate sweet things, and often fall into fits by them, because while the womb is delighted with that sweet and hidden quality with which it hath a peculiar Sympathy, the evil humors that lie in the Womb (especially if there be any corruption from Seed) and the Seed also are stirred, and when the Spirits flie up, they take the bad humours with them, and send bad vapors to the heart which cause suffocation, and other Symptoms. But when the same scents are put to the privities, the womb is refreshed with them, and the Spirits are quiet, to move to the scents. And so the humours (if there be any) are still, or else move downward. But stinks on the contrary by reason of their Antipathy with the womb avoided by the Spirits, and so the humours move downward, and often there is an abortion thereby.

What

What is spoken of sweet Scents, may be understood of all sweet things, and this is our Judgement in a matter so difficult.

H

THE



THE  
FOURTH BOOK.

THE  
SECOND SECTION.

Of the Symptoms in the  
Terms and other Fluxes  
of the Womb.

Chap. I. *Of the Flux of the Terms.*

**B**Y Divine Providence the blood which is voided every month, is kept in when there is a Child. For if it be its nature it is not ill, but only superfluous, till they conceive; nor is it more an Excrement than Seed and Milk.

The Terms commonly begin at fourteen, and then the hair appears on the privities, the breasts swell, and women begin to be lecherous, and the blood can no longer stay in the Veins, but breaks out at the Veins of the Womb.

In

Chap. I. *Of the Flux of Terms.*

In some they begin at twelve, and they are very lustful commonly, and of shorter lives; they continue till fifty; and some till sixty, and then stop. In some they begin at seventeen or eighteen. And in some they stop before fifty according to the variety of Nature and Diet.

Nature doth not send forth every day what is gathered, but stays till the plenty offends, and doth only once in a month, otherwise it would be filthy and unpleasant, and hinder Conception. Nor do they flow at one time in all exactly; but there are twenty two days, or at most thirty between the purgings.

In some they last three days, which was usual in the time of *Hippocrates*. In some four or five, or more, as their Liver is greater, or their diet is higher or lower.

*Hippocrates* saith, they should bleed but a pint and half or two pints: this is not alike in all, but differs in respect of Age and Diet.

As for the quality, it must not be too thick nor too thin, but of a middle substance, without scent, of a red colour, yellower in choleric persons: in melancholick, black; in flegmatick, whiter and it must flow without any great Symptom.

The passages are the veins of the womb, being double from the double branch on both sides it, the Spermatick and Hypogasterick, that they may evacuate superfluities from all parts.

And from this description of a natural Flux, you may gather what is preternatural.

Question, *Whether can a Woman conceive, that never had Terms?*

They are called by some Flowers, because they

H 2

they go before Conception, as flowers do before fruit: but many have conceived that never had their flowers, being hotter by Nature, as the *Indians*, that never had any Flowers; and *Viragoes* that use more exercise: But if these have no more blood then will nourish their body, they are barren.

If any thing abound, that is not required for nourishment of the parts, and is so much, that Nature cannot endure it in the body, the womb draws it to it when it hath conceived, to make up the child: of which hereafter.

Question. 2. *Whether Menstruous blood is only superfluous in quantity, or bad in respect of quality?*

Writers disagree about this. Some say it is bad in quantity and quality, and venomous by the effects, as making Ivory obscure, and infecting Looking-glasses, corrupting Wine, by a Vapor from the body of a Woman that hath her Flowers.

Others say they offend only in Plenty: for if it were venomous, it would not be a whole month in the body, and it could not form the child, nor would Nature make milk of it.

Therefore menstruous blood only offends in quantity, and not in any manifest or hidden quality. But it hath strange qualities when it is mixed with bad humors, or is kept too long in the Body to be corrupted, and cause great Symptoms: but this is when it is mixed with bad humors, or is out of its Vessels, and so corrupt.

Quest.

Question 3. *Of the Text of Aristotle, 7. de Hist. Animalium, cap. 2. And how it is to be understood?*

*Aristotle* writes thus, Constantly every month some have their Terms: but most in the third, as if he should say. Few women have their courses every month, but many have them every third month. This is against *Galen*, and against experience. For it is certain, that among six hundred women, scarce one hath them every third month. Therefore this is either an error in the Greek Text, or in the Translation, or great Men do often lie, which is probable, and so did *Aristotle* in of Physick: Therefore it is in vain to defend their Error.

7 De hist. Ani. c. 2.

### Chap. 2. Of the Terms flowing too soon.

Ordinarily they begin at fourteen; but many have had them sooner. A child of eleven days old had a bloody humor flowing from the Privities. Another of five years old had every month a moderate flux. *Fernel* reports, that a Girl of eight years old had the terms: but are rare, and for the most part very lecherous, and short lived.

Her. saxonia vidit. venetiis ser. 6. part. 5. c. 16.

### Chap. 3. Of want and stopping of the Terms.

Some Women have them not till eighteen or twenty. Some before, and then they stop

H 3

for



for a time, without either giving suck, or being with child. Some have been without them three, five or seven months, and then they came again. This is an evil Constitution, or suppression of that which it ought to flow, from the fault of the blood and stoppage of the passages.

*The Causes.* When Terms are wanting, either blood is wanting or stopt. It is wanting, either because it is not made, or dispersed or turned to other uses, for nature being more solicitous to preserve the individual person, than to propagate the Species, spends it in preserving of the person.

Blood is not made from divers causes: as age, cold constitution of Liver, Heart, or a Disease which distempers the bowels. Or often bleeding from great Veins, or from having many issues, which take from the blood.

It is spent otherways, as before ripe age, and when women are with child or give suck, or in hot Natures, and fat women, in whom it is turned to fat. It is in vain to provoke Terms in these.

They are either external evident causes of stopping of the Terms, as too great labour, troubles, sadness, fear; but these last do not only waste the blood, but cool and corrupt it and cause obstructions, as *Hippocrates* speaks of *Phaüsa* the wife of *Pytheus*.

2 *Epid. sec.*  
3 *in fine.*

The proper causes are, the straitness of the passage, or evil conformation of the parts through which it should flow. Or the closing of the womb, of which we spake, but I speak here of the vessels.

The usual cause of obstructions, is thick slimy humors, from the blood too thick, or mixed with melancholy, which comes with it to the veins of the womb, and stops them.

This

This thick blood comes from a cold distemper of the stomach, liver and spleen, from thick and gross food, and drinking cold water when the Terms flow. So thought *Galen* in his time of the Roman women that drank Snow-water, and had few or no courses.

*Lib. de venæ sec. adversus Eræstrat.*

Straightness is when the body of the womb is made thicker either by Nature or other causes; as a cold and dry, or hot and dry distemper.

Thirdly, Straightness is from compression of the vessels by a Schirrhous or hardness of the parts adjacent as the strait gut, or by the stone in the bladder and the womb displaced.

Fourthly, The Flesh may grow together by a membrane that grows to the Vessels, or a Scar after a wound. Or after a mischance, when the veins annexed to the Secundine, grow so together, that they cannot be opened: of which in the first question.

They are not the same in Women and Virgins: *The Signs.* for blood stopt in Virgins goes to and fro, changeth the colour, and brings Feavers, especially the white Feaver or Green-sickness.

But in Women it goes more to the womb, and brings Symptoms, loathing, vomiting, and Pica.

*Galen* hath other signs, as heaviness, a lazy pain in the loynes, neck, and behind in the head, that reacheth to the roots of the eyes, from the spreading of the blood stopt through the whole body. This laziness is chiefly in the thighs and legs, by reason of the veins there consenting with the womb. And are of a green complexion, and hairy with a beard and shrill voice.

You may know Women with Child, from such as want their Terms, only by proper signs. First

H 4

the

the women with Child keep their Colour: but the other are pale and ill-coloured; they are merry, the other sad. 2. Their Symptoms daily grow milder: but in the other they daily grow worse. 3. You may feel the Child move. 4. It is perceived in a month.

You shall know from what causes the terms are stoppt, thus: if the Liver be cold, there is no blood made that is superfluous, and there are signs of a cold Liver, and you may know that blood is not sent to the Womb, when there is no heaviness, pain, or tumour about the Womb, the Liver or Spleen are stoppt.

*The Prognostick.*

If it be from Flegm or Melancholy which is often, there are signs of their abounding, as laziness, paleness, seldom pulse, crude urin.

*Hippoc. de morb. mulier.*

*Hippocrates* saith, *That if the Terms stop, there are diseases in the Womb, Tumors, Impostumes, Ulcers, and Barrenness, and diseases in the whole Body, Green-sickness, Leucoplegmacy, Dropsie, Vomiting of blood, Heart-ach, Cough.*

*Gal. 6. de loc. aff. 5.*

And the longer they have been stoppt, the harder they are to be opened. *If the blood stop go out at the Nose it is good.*

*Hippoc. 5. aphor. 23.*

If it hath great Symptoms, there is fear of death.

You must not give Medicines to move the Terms, to extenuate lean Persons, nor to such as want blood, and have a weak Liver; but they must be fed high.

*Com. in 6. epid. 3. 29.*

First, see if blood abound, and then (after a Lenitive) open a vein, and let that blood which is in the Veins, be drawn to the Womb. *Galen* took three pints of blood, at three times from a lean Woman and cured her of an old stopping of the Terms.

You must open the Ankle-veins, the first day the

the right, the next the left, four or five days before the time. Or you may cup and scarrifie the Legs.

And bind the parts below, and rub them after general Evacuation, opening of the Hemorrhoids doth hurt, and so do Illues, because they draw from the womb.

*Hiera picra* half an ounce, or *Pills de Tribus*, or *Hiera simple*, are good first.

Then prepare. As, Take water of *Mugwort*, *Calamints*, *Maiden-hair*, each three ounces; *Syrup of the five Roots*, and of *Mugwort*, each two ounces; make it for two Doses. Or, Take opening *Roots* half an ounce, *Madder*, *Burnet*, each three ounces; *Mugwort*, *Betony*, *Germander*, *Calamints*, each a handful; *red Pease* half a handful, *flowers of Bugloss*, *Dill*, each a pugil: boil and sweeten it with Sugar.

For flegmatick Bodies, take the Decoction of *Guajacum*, *Sassaphras*, *Dittany* for fifteen days without sweating.

Then evacuate with *Agarick*, *Mechoacan*, *Turbith*, *Scammony*, *Coloquintida*, *black Hellebore*. As,

Take *Agarick* two drams, infuse it in *Mugwort-water* two ounces, *Oxymel* an ounce, strain, and the Extract of *Mechoacan* a scruple. Or, Take opening *Roots* half an ounce, *Mugwort*, *Betony*, each two pugils; *Senna* half an ounce, *Agarick* two drams. *Fennel* and *Anniseed*, each a scruple; *Galangal* half a dram, *Rosemary-flowers* a pugil, infuse them to three ounces and half, add *Syrup of Senna* an ounce and half, *Cinnamon-water* half a dram.

Or if they drink Wine. Take *Turbith*, *Mechoacan*, *Agarick*, each two drams; *Senna* an ounce and half, *Maiden-hair*, *Balm*, *Rosemary* each two

two pugils; Cinnamon, Galangal, each a dram: hang them in Wine, give six ounces with half an ounce of Manna.

Or, Take Diaturbith with Rhubarb half an ounce, Mechoacan two drams, Agarick a dram, Diarrhodon, Cinnamon, each half a dram: Steel prepared a dram with Raisins make an Electury: give as much as a Walnut.

Or give Pills of Agarick-foetida, and so continue purging and preparing, if the matter be stubborn. Or, Take Agarick two drams, Madder a dram with Syrup of Mugwort, make Pills. Or, Take Aloes three drams, de Tribus one dram, with juice of Savine making Pills.

If the stomach is foul give a Vomit, left it get into the veins.

*Par. I. sec. cap. 2.* Then give provokers of the Terms, which are hot and thin, about the time they used to flow: they are three degrees in strength, and many sorts of Medicines are made of them.

A Powder. Take Cinnamon a dram, Amber a scruple, Saffron half a scruple. Or, Take Troches of Myrrh, of Wall-flowers, each a scruple; Saffron five grains: Or, Take Caster, Penny-Royal, each a scruple; with Wine or proper Waters.

Physical Wine. Take Madder-roots an ounce, Orris half an ounce, Balm, Penny-royal, Mugwort, Rosemary, each a handful; Wall-flowers half a pugil, Cinnamon one ounce, Galangal half an ounce, with Wine, give four ounces.

Or, Take the Decoction of red Pease. Or, Take Smallage, Fennel-roots each half an ounce; Mugwort, Bettony, Penny-royal, Balm, each a handful; red Pease half a handful, Juniper-berries half an ounce, Wall-flowers a pugil, boyl and sweeten it. Or, Take ten ounces of it with three ounces of Mugwort for three doses.

Quer-

Quercetan commends this: Take Gromwel-seeds, Anise, Mistle of the Oak, each three drams; Dittany a dram, Saffron a scruple, bruise, and keep them twenty four hours in Wine, then boyl them; give four ounces for three days together.

Or make the Womens Aqua vitæ. Or, Take Balm, Bettony, Penny-royal, Mugwort, Nep, Motherwort, Dittany each four handfuls; Wine thirty pints, distill them, add three handfuls of each herbs, and distill them again, and add Fennel-seed, Calamus, Cinnamon, Cassia lignea, Cardamoms, each half an ounce: distill them again.

Or give Syrup of Calamints, Mugwort. Or, Take water of Penny-royal, Savin, Calamints, each four ounces; Syrup of Mugwort four ounces, Cinnamon water an ounce; give it at four times.

Rouls, Take extract of Savin a scruple, of Angelica half a scruple, of Elicampane six grains, Oyl of Cinnamon five drops, of Cloves two drops, with Sugar dissolved in Balm-water, Or make an Electuary of Steel six ounces, Cassia lignea, Cinnamon, each two drams; Cloves a dram, Raisins two ounces, with sugar dissolved in Mugwort-water.

Or, Take Troches of Myrrh a dram, Extract of Gentian and Savin, each a scruple; Castor half a scruple, make Pills: give two scruples, or give every third day Pills of Hiera.

Use outward Medicines, but provoke not sweat by them.

Take Althæa and Lilly-roots, each two ounces; Birthwort an ounce, Mallows, Mercury, Mugwort, Savine, Motherwort, Calamint, Penny-royal, Marjoram, Bayes, each two handfuls; flowers of Chamomil, Lavender Cheir, each a handful; Fœnugreek seed an ounce, Juniper and Bayberries, each half a handful: boyl them in Water. foment with Spunges.

And

And then anoint with this: Take Oyl of Lillies an ounce of Lavender-seeds stilled half a dram, Calamints, and Gith-powder, each a dram; Storax Calamite a scruple.

To virgins that must take no Pessaries, give Fumes, with the head defended; they will open the mouths of the vessels, and cut thick humors.

As, take Mirth, Bdellium, Storax, each a dram; Benzoin two scruples, Gallia moschata, Ivet each half a scruple; with liquid Storax make Troches.

Then use Clysters and injections into the Womb with Purgers. As, take Calamints, Pennyroyal, each a handfull; Gith-seed, Turbith each a dram; Coloquintida half a dram, boyl it in Wine, inject it into the Womb.

If it be hot after it, inject the Decoction of Mallows with Milk or Barley-water. And because the neck of the womb lies upon the strait gut, give Clysters. Take Lilly-roots an ounce, Orris, Valerian, each half an ounce; Mercury two handfulls, Mugwort, Savin, each half a handfull; Camomil, Lavender-flowers, each a pugil; Caraway, Gith-seed, each a dram: boyl, add Hiera and Benedicta laxativa, each half an ounce, Oyl of Cheir two drams, Elestuary of Bayberries half an ounce.

If she be no Virgin, put Mercury bruised in a Bag for a Pessary, with Century-flowers. Or Garlick beaten with Oyl of Spike.

Begin still with the mildest, as Mugwort, Mercury, Pennyroyal, Marjoram, Rue; and then add Mucilages and Juyces to loosen the womb: let not Pessaries lie long, lest they cause a Fever.

If it be from a tumor, provoke not the Terms, but look to the tumor.

Let diet be hot and attenuating, of good juyce, with

with Parsley, Savory, Rosemary, Cloves, Cinnamon. Little sleep and much exercise.

Question 1. Whether are the other Causes of stoppage of the Terms?

Some say the blood going to other parts, is a cause; but it is rather contrary, and the suppression of terms is cause of that. For the veins of the Womb are large enough to evacuate blood.

Others say, The strength of the womb is a cause which thickens the Vessels that they receive blood. But the Womb is made to receive it when it abounds.

Others accuse the strength, which is to be denied: but when it is so strong, that it is too hot or too dry, and will not receive the blood, and that is a sign of weakness. But there must be strength in the whole body, to cast our superfluous blood, or there will be other mischiefs.

Question 2. What Veins must be opened when Terms are stopt.

Authors disagree in this, as Aetius, and Galen who always speaks of the Ankle-veins: and most are of his mind, being it is rational. For a Vein opened in the Arm, doth rather revel from the Womb, then draw the blood to it. But in the Ankle, brings it to its place, and opens Obstructions, and doth both lessen and bring blood to the womb, and move that which is in the womb fixed.

Open the Ankle therefore twice or thrice, rather than the Arm once. Therefore Galen, commends Hippocrates, that he opened a vein in the Ankle.

Lib. de sang. miss. cap. II, 18, 19.

Lib. de sang. miss. adver. cr. Ankle sis.

Book IV. *Of Practical Physick*. Part. II. Sect. 2.  
Ankle in the Servant of *Schimarg*, though she had  
a Plethory.

But in other diseases of the womb, as inflam-  
mation, dropping, or too many Terms, it is good  
to open a vein in the Arm. The Saphæna is o-  
pened by putting the foot in warm water, be-  
fore and after.

Question 3. *At what time must a Vein be open-  
ed against the stoppage of the Terms.*

*Galen* saith, It must be when Nature may be  
helped, be the blood moved: that is, three or  
four days before the usual time of their coming,  
as if she had been always in the full of the  
Moon, and they have been stoppt some months.  
Bleed three or four days before the full, to put  
Nature in mind of her duty, and to make the  
blood run again.

### Chap. 10. *Of Fewness of the Terms.*

IT is when they flow less then they use or  
ought to flow.

*The Causes.* It is either from the blood, or in the expul-  
sive Faculty in the passages. As if blood be lit-  
tle the Terms are few and slow. If the retentive  
Faculty is weak, and the expulsive strong, they  
come at due time, but in small quantity. If the  
terms are slow, the fault is in the quality of the  
blood, being too thick. Also straitness of the pas-  
sages may be a cause: for if they be not wide  
enough the blood cannot flow freely.

*The Signs.* The Patient will tell the disease: but the cause  
of it is to be found in the Chapter foregoing.  
Few

Few Terms from little blood is not dange- *The Prognosis:*  
rous: if they be stoppt from thick blood, there *stick,*  
follow Diseases, as Erysipelas, Schirrhus or Can-  
cer.

See the Chapter aforesaid for the Cure, and *The Causes:*  
if it be from thickness of Blood, it is often cu-  
red by a general purge of the whole body.

### Chap. 5. *Of Dropping of the Terms.*

THIS is a Flux, and lasts long, and there is  
pain.

The blood flows not conveniently at the due  
time and manner, and the privities are always  
ret, as when the urin drops.

Are from the blood and the passages of it, and *The Causes.*  
the retentive faculty; as when the blood is too  
thick and sharp, which stir up Nature to let it  
out; and because it stretcheth the Membranes,  
there is pain. Also the weakness of the reten-  
tive faculty is a cause.

The women declare it: but if it be from thick *The Signs.*  
blood and sharp, and strait passages, there is a  
stretching pain about the womb. If it be from  
crudity of blood, and weakness of the retentive  
faculty, the blood flows without pain, and is not  
much felt.

It is troublesome to women; and if it last long, *The Prognosis:*  
causeth Ulcers and Inflammations.

It is all in mending of the thick and sharp *stick.*  
blood, and in opening the passages, which are *The Cure.*  
the two chief causes of it, of which we spake at  
large.

If blood be superfluous, loose it not, nor  
open

upon the Ankle-vein, lest you draw it more to the womb, but take away the Cacochymy.

If it be from weakness of the retentive Faculty, strengthen the Womb with Dryers and Astringents.

### Chap. 6. *Of the overflowing of the Terms.*

**I**T is when it is too much or too long, and hurts any Woman, and brings diseases: but a certain proportion of bleeding is not to be defined; but too much is lost when the actions are hurt.

The immediate cause is the opening of the Vessels, and the immediate cause is the blood in quantity or quality offending, or by its force or disorderly motion.

Vessels are opened by Anastomosis, Diapedesis, Diarexis or ruption, or by Diaurosis, or corrosion. Anastomosis is from a moist distemper of the Vessels, which looseth the Orifices: Or from external causes, as Baths hot and moist: or use of Aloes.

The flux is seldom too great from a Diapedesis: for it is but a sweating through. Ruption is from Plethory, when the terms have long been stopped, and then break out, and when the blood is hot by Air, Baths, &c. The outward causes are falls, strokes, hard travel, great burthens lifted.

Erosion is from sharp blood or humor, or from Medicines that corrode; as Pessaries long kept. For this great Flux is chiefly from the veins in the bottom of the Womb.

The Flux of Blood is too great; when the strength abateth, and Cachexy follows, with pale-

*The Causes.*  
*Gal. 3. de*  
*symp. Causis,*  
*c. 2. & 5.*  
*Aph. com.*  
57.

*The Signs.*

### Chap. 6. *Of the overflowing of the Terms.*

ness, swollen feet, and the blood that comes from the bottom of the Womb, is blacker and clotted. That from the neck redder and thinner.

The signs of the causes. If it be from much blood, there are signs of plethory, and is easily clotted together. If the blood be sharp and choleric, it is putrified in the womb, you shall know waterish blood by its colour, and the signs of that humour abounding: and if you dip a clout in it, and dry it in the shade, you may see it. If the womb be too moist, such causes went before. If it be from breaking of Veins, they will tell you of violence. If it be from corrosion, it is little and slow, sometimes pure, sometimes serous.

If it weaketh the whole Body, the Liver and Bowels, there is Swounding, the Whites, and paleness, and Dropsie sometimes. That which hath been long, is hard to be cured, and causeth death, and in an old woman it is deadly.

If there be fulness, abate the blood, and keep it from flowing to the womb, **revel it, repel, cool** and astringe it, that it may not flow so fast, and then amend the blood.

If it is from plenty of blood, open the Liver-veins in the right Arm; bleed little and often, because it makes better revulsion, and weakens not, open the Salvetella if there be weakness, and cup the Back and Breast against the Liver beneath the Paps, where are Veins from the womb: cup not beneath, but in the Shoulders, or Back and Arm with Scarification: but scarifie not under the Breasts.

Bind and rub the arms and shoulders, and temper and thicken the sharp thin humors, with Decoctions and water of Plantane, Purslane, Sorrel,

*The Prog-*  
*stick.*

*Indications.*

*The Cure.*

*Gal. 5. aph.*  
*com. 50.*

rel, Knot-grass, Shepherds-purse, Pomegranate Syrup, and of dried Roses, Sorrel, Purslane, Coral, Conserve of Roses, Bole, sealed Earth.

If it be urgent, use Narcoticks, Syrup of Poppies, Treacle, Philonium, Laudanum.

If it still continue, it is fed with Choler, therefore purge it with Syrup of Roses, Manna, Rhubarb, Senna.

If it be fed with ferous blood, help the Reins that do not their duty, and the Liver, and sweat with China.

You must not provoke urin, but use astringents. As, Take the juce of *Ass-dung*, Syrup of *Mirtles*, each half an ounce; *Plantane water* an ounce. Give it her, and let her not know what it is.

Decoctions. Take *Comfrey-roots*, *Tormentil*, each two drams, *Purslane*, *Plantane*, each a handful: boil them, add to six ounces Syrup of *Currans*, *Quinces*, *Mirtles*, each six drams: give it at twice. Or, Take Syrup of *Purslane*, juce of *Nettles*, each two ounces; *Purslane-water* four ounces, *Troches of Amber*, of *sealed Earth*, each a dram; *Blood-stone* half a dram: give two spoonfuls every day.

A Water. Take eight pints of water, with *Starch*, *Barley-meal*, and *Rice*, dried *Roses* a handful, juce of *Tarrow*, *Plantane*, each half a pint; *Comfrey-roots* and all three ounces, *Horstail*, *Blood-wort*, each half a handful; *Pears* and *Quinces*, *Pomegranate-flowers*, all *Sanders*, each half an ounce *Mastich* an ounce. Distil them, and give two ounce with half an ounce of Syrup of *Roses* or *Purslane*.

Electuaries. *Conserve of Roses* two ounces, *Quinces* an ounce and half, *Troches of burnt Ivory* and *sealed Earth*, each a dram; *Crocus Martis*, *Bole*, *red Coral* prepared, *Mastich*, each half a dram: with

Syrup

Syrup of *Mirtles* make an Electuary.

Powders. Take *Mastich*, *red Coral* prepared each a dram; *Pearl*, *Smaragds* prepared, each a scruple; *Blood-stone* half a scruple, *Bole* half a dram, make a Powder.

*Mic ael Paschal* cured many with this powder. Take two *Egg-shells*, burnt *Frankincense*, *Mastich*, each half an ounce; *Pearl*, *red Coral* and *Amber*, each two drams; *Blood-stone*, *Smaragds* prepared, each half a scruple; *Barley-flower* two pugils, whites of four *Eggs*, with steeled water make Cakes. Give from half a dram to a dram in powder, with Trotter-broath in the morning.

Or give every day a dram of the powder of *Mulberry-tree roots*. Or, take a plump *Turtle* drawn and pluckt, wash it in *Rose-water* and red Wine, put an ounce of *Mastich* in the belly of it, stick it on, and roast it, and bast it with *Vinegar of Roses*. Then put it into a glass close luted, to be dried in an Oven; then beat all of it to powder. Give a spoonful with *Plantane-water*, or an astringent Decoction. Anoint the bottom of the Belly, Reins and Groyns, with the dropping of it.

Or make Rouls thus: Take *Bole* half a dram, *Magistery of Coral* a dram, *Pearl* prepared a scruple, *Sorrel* and *Plantane-seed*, each half a dram; *Aromaticum rosatum*, *Tragant*, each half a dram: with *Sugar* dissolved in *Plantane-water*, make Rouls.

In the use of cold Astringents, take heed you stop not the Veins, and the heat be cooled. If these help not, use Narcoticks, as *Troches of sealed Earths*, and *Amber* with *Opium*: these astringe also.

Use no Pessaries, except the Veins in the neck of the Womb be open. As, Take *Snakeweed*,

I 2

For

Lib. de can  
rat. morb.  
cap. 53.

Ex petras  
fores ra.

Tormentil, each half an ounce; Pomegranate-flowers, Plantane-seed, each two drams; Comfrey-roots half an ounce, Frankincense, Mastich, each a dram; Acacia, Sanguis Draconis, each two scruples; Blood-stone, Starch, each a dram and half; with the white of an Egg and Gum tragacanth dissolved in Rose-water, make Pessaries with red Silk.

Womb-Clysters. Take juyce of Tarrow, Solomon-seal, each two ounces; Mucilage of Gum Arabick made in Plantane-water two ounces, make a Clyster,

A Fume. Take Frankincense, Mastich, each two drams; Myrtles, Labdanum, each a dram; red Roses, Pomegranate-flowers, each half a dram; with Gum tragacanth make Troches to be burnt

Oyntments. Take Oyl of Mirtles, Quinces, each two ounces; juyce of Plantane, Solomons-seal, Horsetail each an ounce; boil the juyces away, add Bole, Plantane-seed, Myrtle-berries, Cerufs, each half an ounce; with Wax make an Oyntment. Or use the Countesses Oyntment to the Loins and Pecten.

Cataplasms. Take Quinces, Pearls boiled in red Wine, and Bole, Mastich, Sanguis Draconis, Acacia, make a Cataplasim or a Cerot. Or, Take Sorrel and Plantane-seed, Purslane-seed, Bole, Sanguis Draconis, each two drams; Frankincense, Mastich, Mirtle, each three drams; Turpentine an ounce, with juyce of Plantane and Tarrow and Wax, make a Cerot after the Juyces are boiled away.

Fomentations are better than Baths: for they make the humors flow more. Let them be astringent and cool. Or wash the Legs and Hips in cold water. Lay Epithems to the Liver, Oyntments, Cerots or Plaisters.

If Cholera offend, give Rhubarb and Conserve of Roses to evacuate the Cacoehymy.

Chap. 7. Of the Terms flowing with pain, &c.

If blood flow from a vein broken, use Coral, Bole, Mirtles, Comphry, Acacia, Hypocistis: or apply a pultis of whites of Eggs, and astringent powders.

If it come from a vessel corroded, use stoppers and glutinaters that are slimy, as Dropwort-roots a dram, with a rear Egg.

Let the diet be as the Physick is. In a flux from plethora, eat little, and that of little nourishment, and in other cases give things to close the vessels. Sleep long, and use little Venery, little or no exercise. Anger hurts, and other passions.

Question. Whether Frictions or Ligatures in the Legs may be made for Revulsion?

Hippocrates and Galen are misconstrued in his 8. Book of Blood-letting, and they are not to be used in the flux of the Terms.

Chap. 7. Of the Terms flowing with pain and Symptoms.

The Symptoms are pain in the Loyns or Thighs, Head-ach, biting at the mouth of the Stomach, pain in the Belly and Loyns, fainting.

They are as in suppression of Terms, but less vehement. and are in them that have not conceived. There is obstruction, thick and gross blood, that stretcheth the vessels, and the blood flows not orderly. *The Causes.*

A little before the Terms, there is head-ach, biting at the stomach, pain in the loyns, and bottom of the stomach, with beating at the heart, and *The Signs.*



and fainting. When the pain is from thick blood it comes forth in clodds, and the pain is worse than before. If it be from wind, it is sudden, and stays not in a place, and there is rumbling in the belly.

*The Prog-  
nostick.  
The Cure.*

Take heed it turn not to the stoppage of terms, if it be neglected. It is greater in barren women & Virgins, then in those who have had children. Take away the cause; if they be thick humors, evacuate them after they are prepared: if sharp, temper them. These attenuate blood water of Grafs-roots, Madenhair, Decoctions of the opening Roots, Syrup of Maidenhair, of the five Roots, Treacle, and the like, in the stoppage of the Terms.

Against pain, use the Fomentations and Oynments in the Chapter of pain of the Womb.

### Chap. 8. Of evil discoloured Terms.

This is called the Terms depraved by bad humors, and so they are voided.

*The Causes.*

Blood is foul, either from evil diet, or evil humors, or stoppage of it. The humors are flegm, choler, or melancholy mixed with it, and then the Terms are either pale, blew, green or black and stinking, or white and flegmatick. They are so from a fault in the stomach. The pale & yellow are from too great heat in the Liver. The black are from the spleen disordered.

*The Signs.*

That blood which is natural, is different from the bad in colour and substance: it is like that of a new slain sheep, nor thicker nor thinner, and the bad Terms come not seasonably, but sooner or

### Chap. 9. Of Terms coming before their time.

later, of which Hippocrates. You may know by the colour what humor predominates, and by the substance. The flegmatick and melancholy are long in coming, and the cholerick waterish Terms come quicker.

The more they differ from the natural state, the worse they are: black and stinking are worst. The matter are worst of all. If these flow seven, eight or nine days, she is cured: if they ulcerate the womb, she is barren.

Hippocrates saith, they must be purged and prepared with proper things, as we shewed in the distempers of the womb. But take heed that you move not the Terms when you attenuate: for that will melt the serous humors, and fix them more in the vessels: use neither Vinegar nor sharp things.

*The Cure.  
5. Aphor.*

After purging, consume the reliques by sweat; if choler be in fault, that must not be sweated out discuss it with warm Baths, and do so in melancholy. Use Pessaries, Fomentations and Fumes to the womb.

Give Treacle, Mithridate, or the Decoction of Angelica-roots, if cold humors are the cause.

### Chap. 9. Of Terms coming before their time.

These shew an ill constitution. And it is a depraved excretion of the Terms that comes for the time often: for sometimes they flow sooner, or twice in a month.

*The Causes.*

The immediate Cause is hurt of the retentive and expulsive faculty, so that the blood flows not so sooner or later, or oftner: the cause why they

come sooner, is in the blood that stirs up the expulsive faculty in the whole body, or in the womb: sometime all causes meet; the blood is too much or too sharp and hot; and if the retentive faculty in the womb be weak, and the expulsive strong and of quick sense, it is sooner.

A fall, stroke or passion are the evident Causes.

*The Signs.*

They will relate it: and the signs of the causes are these: If it be from much blood, there are the signs of plethory; heat, thinness, and sharp humors are known by the distemper of the whole. The weakness of the retentive faculty, and looseness of the vessels is known from a loose and moist habit of body.

*The Prognostick.  
The Cure.*

It is not dangerous, but troublesome, and hinders conception.

If they come too soon from hurt in the faculty provoked by too much plethory, let blood, use a spare diet, and much exercise. If it be from sharp blood, temper it by good diet, and Medicines, as in the cholerick distemper of the womb.

Use Baths of Iron-water, that corrects the distempers of the bowels, then evacuate.

If it come from the retentive faculty, and looseness of the vessels, correct the cold and moist distemper with gentle astringents.

If it be from a stroke or fall, cure it as the vessels opened are cured, of which before.

### Chap. 10. Of the Terms that come after their usual time.

**W**hen they stay longer than ordinary, and return without order at no set time:

### Chap. 16. Of Terms that come after their usual time.

time: the causes are little and thick blood, straitness of the passages, weakness of the expulsive faculty, and dulness. Either of these causes may stop the Terms: but if all meet, the disease is worse.

For if blood be not bred in such a quantity, that may prick Nature forward to expel it, the purging of it is deferred, till there be enough to stir up Nature to expel it. If thick humors are in the blood, the passage stop, and the faculty weak, the Terms must needs be disordered, and the purging of them deferred longer.

If it be from want of blood, she hath either lived poor in diet, or exercised too much and she finds no inconvenience by the want of her Terms. If it be from gross slimy blood, there are signs of Cachochymy. The weakness of the faculty is known by the cold distemper of the Womb.

It is not so dangerous as stoppage of the terms, but it is bad enough in a plethorick or cacochymical body.

If little blood be, use a fuller diet, and exercise not. If blood be gross and foul, make it thin, and cut it, and after Preparatives, let the humors mixed therewith, be evacuated. It is good to purge presently after the Terms, and to use Calamints, and to purge often.

Also four or five dayes before the Terms, scarifie the ankles, and hold the feet in warm water, rub the legs, apply Cupping-glasses without Scarification to the inside of the thighs, and use Fumes and Pessaries.

Anoint the bottom of the belly with things to provoke the Terms. If there be a numbness, use things against the Palsie.

Chap.

## Chap. 11. Of the Terms voided another way.

Sometimes they come out of the Nose, or are vomited up, or flow out of the Hæmorrhoid veins. Hence *Hippocrates* saith, that a woman that vomits blood, is cured by having her Terms or by a Bloody-flux. Sometimes they are pissed forth. *Dodonaus*, says, That they come out at the eyes like tears sometimes. *Amatus Lusitanus* saith, they will come forth at the Teats of the breasts, and at the navel, at the little finger, or ring finger every month, as *Mercatus* observed thrice.

1. De morb. mul. 5.  
Apho. 32.  
obser. med. c. 15.  
Lib. 1. de affect. mul. c. 7.

The Causes.

Are stoppage of the Terms from straitness of the vessels in the womb, or evil confirmation of the womb.

The Prog-  
nostick.

It is more troublesome than dangerous, and hinders conception. It is best when they come out at the Nose: for it is a part that Nature useth to disburden her self by.

The Cure.

First, Bring the blood to the womb again, and abate it. Open the ankle-vein three days before she begins to bleed. Or cup the thighs, or rub them. Or use Baths, Fomentations, Oynments, Womb-Clysters, Pessaries, and the like, mentioned in Suppression of the Terms.

## Chap. 12. Of the Whites.

IT is a foul excretion from the womb, white, and sometimes blew, or green, or reddish, nor at a set time, nor every month, but disorderly, longer or shorter. Before or after the Terms; and when they are stopt. Virgins seldom have this disease, and women with child have it sometimes.

It

It differs from the running of the reins; for it is in less quantity, whiter and thicker, and at a greater distance. It differs from night pollution, which is only in sleep with the imagination of Venery.

The immediate Cause is an excrementitious humor, slegm, choler or melancholy. Sometimes it is like waterish blood. It is gathered in the whole body, or in the stomach, liver or spleen. For they who have crudities in the stomach, are subject to this disease. Sometimes the womb alone is distempered after often mischances, or when the womb is very cold and moist.

The Causes.

This matter flows through the veins of the womb, or of the neck of it, which use to carry blood, and nature abuseth them to carry excrements, especially if they are bred in the womb.

The remote causes are whatsoever doth breed bad humors: some have it after strong purges, or long bathing.

Sometimes they are pale, sometimes blew, red, waterish, and green: sometimes slimy, or cold, or sharp, or stinking. In young people it is reddish.

The Differences.

The face is discoloured, the Urin thick, there is loathing and heart-ach. If the humor be sharp and corrupt, there is a Fever. If it be slegmatick and much, the ligaments of the Womb are loose and it falls out, thus *Hippocrates*, and there are saith he, swelled eyes, evil colour, and short breathing.

The Signs.

If it be not bred in the womb, the humor is from a Cacochymy. If it be from a fault in another part the signs of that will appear. If it come only from the Womb, there will be but little: if from the whole body, there will be more.

Lib. de natur. mulierum.

If

*The Prog-  
nostick.*

It is often, long with little inconvenience, but it must be looked to, lest it be worse: for it often breaks Ulcers, Cachexy, falling out of the womb, Consumption, Fainting, Convulsions, when the matter is sent to the brain or nerves. And the worse the humour is, the greater is the disease.

*The Cure.*

It must not be suddenly stoppt, lest it go to the noble parts.

First, see whether it be from the whole body or any part, or from the Womb it self. If from the whole body, which is often, make general evacuation, and turn the humors from the womb, and keep a good diet, lest they come again.

I allow not bleeding in the arm, if the terms be stoppt; for they cause a Cacochymy, which admits no bleeding. Moreover the mass of blood may be made foul by them, therefore find out whether it comes from Cacochymy or Plethory. And when it is most like to come from Cacochymy, bleed not.

Therefore if flegm abound, which is most usual after general purging, consume the reliques with Guaiacum and Sarsa, and a drying diet, and by provoking Urine, of which hereafter.

If sharp and choleric humors abound, temper them with gentle astringents, as Succory, Endive, Sorrel, to prepare, purge with Rhubarb, Triphera Perfica, aggregative Pills, and Pills of Rhubarb. If it be melancholy, do as in melancholy.

If it be water, cure it as *Galen* did the Wife of *Bethus* c. 8. *lib. de prognost. ad Posth.*

If it be in the stomach, liver, or the like, prevent it from increase, and because it is most about the stomach, give a Vomit, but not too strong. Then strengthen the stomach with hot and

and dry Medicines. If Cholera abound, the Distemper is hot, and then cool it.

If it come from the Womb, do as I shewed, from what cause soever it is. Baths are good to evacuate and divert, and strengthen, and take away a moist distemper, provided they are proper for the Constitution.

Use Dryers and Astringents. As, Take Conserve of red Roses four ounces, of Succory two ounces, red Coral, Snakeweed, Tormentil-roots, Ivory, each two drams; with Syrup of Mirtles make an Electuary,

Or, Take red Coral, Bole, sealed Earth, each an ounce, Pearl prepared a scruple, Mastich half a dram, Cypress-roots two scruples, Mace half a scruple, with Sugar of Roses as much as all, make a powder. Or, Take Diarrhodon a dram, Sanders a scruple, Coriander two drams, Mastich, Coral, each a dram, with Sugar, make Troches.

But use not these Astringents, till the Body be purged, lest the waterish humours be stoppt, and the Belly swell: but you may use hot Dryers safely, as Treacle, Mithridate, with Conserve of Roses and Wormwood.

As, Take Conserve of Rosemary-flowers an ounce, Diacorus two drams, Diarrhodon, Aromaticum Rosatum, each a dram; red Coral prepared a dram and half, Treacle two drams, with Syrup of Citron-peels, make an Electuary.

And lest the womb be hurt with evil humors, inject the decoction of Barley, Honey of Roses and Whey, with Syrup of dried Roses. Or of Wormwood, Mints, Motherwort, red Roses, Allum. And then use a Fume of Frankincense, Labdanum, Mastich, Sanders, Nutmeg, red Roses.

Avoid

Avoid crude and moist things, and Fish, Milk and all sweet Meats, and Salt. Forbear Suppers, drink red Wine: sleep and wake moderately, lie not upon the Back, least the Loyns be heated, and the humors sent to the Womb.

Question. *Whether are Diureticks good in the Whites?*

Diureticks that provoke urin do also provoke terms; therefore the reliques of the humors would be carried by them to the womb, but these move the terms secondarily: but if the Body be well purged, first they will not make the Flux greater, but bring it out by Urin.

Chap. 13. *Of a Gonorrhœa.*

The running of the Reins may be in all women that are fit for a man; for it is the Flux of natural Seed. It is in men and women from the French Pox: but when stinking humors do flow, it is not properly called a Gonorrhœa.

*The Causes.* The chief cause, is the weakness of the retentive faculty, and the looseness and largeness of the Seed-vessels: the causes of these are shewed in the Gonorrhœa of men.

*The Signs.* The Woman will declare it, and the greatness and the colour. For if it be white, and little, and thick, and at distance, it is a true Gonorrhœa.

*The Prognostick.* If it continue, it brings a Consumption, and Barrenness.

*The Cure.* The cure of a Gonorrhœa and night pollution is *Pract. 3.* but I shall add this, if it come from plenty of Seed, the Buds of the Salix or Willow,

low, is good with Wine. If it be from weakness of the retentive faculty, give *Caster, half a scruple,* and use Astringents to the Belly, Reins, and Stones; or a Bath of *Willow-leaves, Mirtles, Quinces, each two handfuls: Rosemary, red Roses, each a handful; Cypress-nuts three ounces.* Let her sit in up to the Navel. And apply Bags of the same to the Loyns, Kidnies, Privities; and anoint after with Oyl of Mastic and Mirtles.

Chap. 14. *Of strange things voided by the Womb.*

There is matter often voided by the Womb, of which before.

And sometimes stones and gravel breed in the womb, as *Ætius* and *Peter Salus Diversus* speaks of a Nun, that after a pain that no Medicine could cure, voided a rough stone as big as a Ducks Egg, and then she was at ease: but a foul Flux of the Womb followed, of which she died.

*Hippoc. 5. epid. lect. 4. ser. 4. c. 98.*

*Worms.*

*Gracias Lapius* writes, that he saw a woman, that voided many Ascarides of the Womb.

*Lib. var. lect. c. 133*

T H E



THE  
FOURTH BOOK.

THE  
THIRD SECTION.

Of the Symptoms that  
befal all Virgins and Wo-  
men in their Wombs, after  
they are ripe of Age.

Chap. i. *Of Virginity.*

**I**T is the integrity of Womens Privities not violated by Man : but what are the signs of Virginity, is a Question. I think thus :

Question 1. *Whether doth the Hymen which is the sign of Virginity, appear in all Women.*

Some say there is no such thing, and if a Membrane be there, it is preternatural, and a disease in

Chap. i.

*Of Virginity.*

in the Organ, called the Closing of the Womb.

Some famous Physicians and Anatomists say, there is a Hymen, which is the sign of Virginity. It is, they say a Membrane wrinckled with Caruncles like Mirtle-berries, like the bud of a Rose half blown : hence came the word [*Deflower.*]

I think with the Ancients, that there is something in these parts that distinguisheth Virgins from Women, which is violated in the first Copulation : many say they have it, and we may believe them. For it is certain, that there is an alteration at first in Virgins, which causeth pain and Bleeding, which is a sign of Virginity.

But what this is, it is not yet known manifestly. Some say it is a nervous Membrane, with small Veins which bleed at the first bout. Some say, there are four Caruncles tied together with small Membranes. Some have observed a fleshy Circle about the Nymphæ with obscure little Veins, which makes the Membrane not to be nervous but fleshy.

To be short. I suppose it to be certain, that the part which receives the Yard, is not them that have used a man, as in Virgins, nor is it alike in all, and this hath caused the diversity of Opinions in Anatomists. Moreover this is not found in all Virgins, because some are very lustful, and when it itcheth, they put in their finger, or some other thing and break the Membrane: sometimes the Midwives break it.

Question 2. *Whether do all Virgins at the first bout of Copulation bleed?*

The Africans had a Custom to shut the Bride-  
groom and Bride up in a Chamber, after they were  
K Africans.

were married, till they prepared the Wedding dinner. And an Old Woman stood at the door, to receive a bloody sheet from the Bridegroom, that she might shew it in triumph to all the Guests, and that then they might feast with joy. And if there was no Blood to be seen, the Bride was to be sent home to her Friends with disgrace, and the Guests went sadly home without their Dinner.

Some say from Experience, that some honest Virgins have lost their Maiden-heads without bleeding, and that is a certain sign of Virginitie when they bleed, and when they do not, they are not to be censured as unchast. I hold that young Virgins will bleed, but when they are in years, by reason of the long continuance of the Terms, the parts are harder and longer; and if the mans yard be small, there is no necessity of bleeding. Or if the Girle was wanton afore, and by long handling, hath dilated the part, or broke it, there is no blood after Copulation. Therefore *Deut. Chap. 20.* the Law of *Moses* is taken for that which hapneth often, and for the most part. And there can be no more gathered from hence, but bleeding is an undoubted sign of Virginitie. The same be said of the *African* Custome.

Question 3. *Whether is the straitness of the Privities a sign of Virginitie?*

The Privities are straiter in some according to age, habit of body, and other circumstances, and Virgins are straiter then Women that have been at it. But I deny the straitness is a certain Argument of Virginitie. For after many acts of Venery, it may be made so strait by astringent Medicines,

dicines, that Whores may be taken for Virgins, as we shewed concerning a Wench that was married, and to appear a Virgin, she used a Bath of Comfrey-roots.

Question 4. *Whether is Milk in the Breasts a sign of Virginitie lost?*

Some say, That there can be no Milk in the Breasts, till a Woman hath conceived: and Virgins have neither the cause nor the end why milk is made. And the terms stopt do rather corrupt then turn to milk. And though there be always in the Breasts a faculty to make milk: yet doth it not shew its power, but upon an object, and for some end.

Some say, That Virgins may have Milk, and urge this saying of *Hippocrates*: *If any have Milk when she is neither with Child nor Breeding, their terms are stopt.* *Galen* is of the same opinion, and though it be seldom: yet he saith it is possible, And *Alexander Benedictus* and *Christopher de Vega* saw it.

We shall not contradict *Hippocrates*, and Experience: but there is a twofold milk. The one of Virgins: the other of those that have brought forth or conceived. The first is made of Blood, that cannot get out at the womb, but goes to the Breasts; and this is nothing but a superfluous nourishment of the Breasts, that turns milk by the faculty of the Breasts, without the company of a man or conception. The other is only when there is a child: of this milk it is true what *Hippocrates* writes, *It is a certain sign of a Mole, when great bellied women have no milk in their Breasts.* And true milk in the Breasts is a sign of a live Child in the Womb.

R 2

These

5. *Apb.* 39.  
*Gal. in com.*  
*Lib. 3 anat.*  
*c. 4. com.*  
*in aphorif.*  
*lib. 5. 39.*

*Cit. loc de*  
*morb. mu-*  
*lierum.*

These Milks differ in respect of the blood, and diversity of the veins that bring it to the Breasts; and though both are white: yet that of Virgins is thinnest, nor is it so much, nor so sweet; this may breed in the veins according to Aristotle from the superfluous nourishment of the Breasts: and if Virgins have it, they are not to be termed unchast.

1. De hist.  
ant. c. 12.

Chap. 2. Of the Green-sickness,  
or white Fever.

This is in Virgins fit for a man: it is called the Virgins Disease, and the white Fever; not that there is always a Fever; but because their Face is like people in a Fever. It is thus defined.

The Virgins Disease, is the changing of the natural colour into pale and green with faintness, heaviness of body, loathing of meat, palpitation of Heart, difficult breathing, sadness, swelling of the Feet, Eye-lids and Face, from depraved nourishment.

The Causes. The first Cause is stoppage of Terms: the next is the gathering of bad humors. For when the way to the womb is stopt, the blood returns to the great Vessels and Bowels, and choaks their heat, and stops the vessels and spoils the making of blood, and then there are crudities; which being brought to the habit of the body, cannot be united perfectly to the parts, and cause a Cachexy, which is the way to a Dropsie and Leucophlegmacy, and divers Symptoms. The causes of the obstructions of the Vessels of the Womb, are crude humors, and flegmatick, slimy blood, from

from evil diet, and drinking of Vinegar, or eating raw Corn, Chalk, Ashes, Lime, Earth, Clay, and the like.

There is a pale and green colour, the Face is swollen, and the Eye-brows in the morning, after sleep especially; the Ankles swell, and the whole body is loose, and moist from much water: the legs are lazy, the Pulse is little and often, in the Neck, Temples and Back. The heart beats, the breath is short when they go up stairs, they loath meat. Some have the Pica, or desire to eat absurd things. The terms are stopt, the Hypochondria are swollen. Sometimes they vomit. If vapors rise to the Head, there is thirst and head-ach: and if Melancholly be mixed, the animal actions are hurt.

These are not all in all people: but most are in most, and some in all.

It is often turned to a Dropsie. Some after death have a hard Scirrhus, hard Liver. Some suddenly, the Heart being oppressed. If the stomach be much afflicted, it is dangerous, and they loath meat much. If it come from the womb alone, it is easier cured.

It is best to begin in the Spring or Summer: after a Clyster, open a Vein in the Ankle.

Then heat the thick cold humor, and make it thin; and because it is too much to be purged at once, prepare and purge often, and mix attenuators and cutters with your purges.

When the humors are above the stomach and Mesentery, it is good to vomit, those that can easily vomit, and to give Liver-Physick, or Spleen or Womb-Physick, even as in Leucophlegmacy, see the Chapter of Term stopt. But in this disease, always consider the Liver, Spleen and Mesentery,



mentery, the obstructions of which are cured with things mentioned.

At first open the obstructions of these parts with some few things that provoke terms, and after give more.

Thus: Take opening Roots an ounce, Mad-dag, Fryngo, Orris, Elicampane, Citron-peels dried, Sarsa, each half an ounce; Mugwort, Agrimony, Germander, each a handful; Savin two pugils, Carthamus-seed an ounce, Senna two ounces, Mechoacan, Agarick, each half an ounce; Stoechyl flower two pugils, Fennel, Aniseed, Galangal, each two drams; boyl them to a pint and half, sweeten, and add Cinnamon-water three drams. Or infuse them all with Sea-wormwood half a handful, common Wormwood two pugils. Or, Take Agarick Pills of Rhubarb, each a dram; Quercetan's Pills of Tartar and of Ammoniacum, each half a dram; Spike a scruple, Oyl of Cinnamon three drops, Extract of Wormwood half a scruple, make Pills: give a scruple an hour before meat. Or, Take juyce of Mercury, clarified Honey or Sugar, each an ounce, add Gith-seed, Senna, each two drams; Mechoacan a dram, make a Mass; or give Conserve of Marsh-mallows gold flowers.

Steel is an excellent Remedy after Preparatives, with proper Drinks or Ingredients. And if the Vessels of the stomach are stop't give a Vommit, and then gros powder of Steel.

*Hoc laudat  
Mercatus.*

If the Mesentery be stop't; Take Diarrhodon, Diacurcuma, Agarick, each a dram; Carthamus-seeds two drams, red Dock-roots, Carrot-seed each a dram and a half; Cloves a dram, Steel prepared two ounces, with clarified Honey make an Eleſuary: give two or four drams. If the vomit, stop it not.

If the Liver be chiefly stop't, let the Steel be

finely powdered. And take of it half a pound, add eight ounces of Wine in a glass, set it in the embers, stir it, and let it boil twelve fimmers, till you see it froth, and grow a little thick; then pour the froath and all into another Vessel. Do thus four times, and then let it be gently boiled, till it be thick as honey. Then, Take Parsley, Carrot-seed, Diacurcuma, Diarrhodon, each a dram and a half; Cinnamon a dram, Steel prepared six drams, with Honey make an Eleſuary: give three drams, or five after exercise.

If the Spleen be stop't, Take Steel prepared a pound, wash it with Vinegar, then strain it, and lay it on a Clout, and add powder of Cloves half an ounce. Let them stand so a day and a night. then put them in a glazed Vessel, and ten ounces of white Wine, Diarrhodon, Harts-tongue, Senna, and Capers-bark, then stir them, then set them in the Sun for a day, or in an Oven. Do this ten days, till the Steel be melted in the Wine, and little or nothing at the bottom. Give two ounces of this in the morning after purging and exercise.

Or, Take Steel prepared an ounce, Cinnamon, Aniseeds, each two drams; Diamoschu without Musk a dram, Sugar an ounce, make a Powder, give a dram; drink white Wine and Mugwort-water after it.

Stealed Wine. Take Steel in powder three ounces, Cinnamon half an ounce, white Wine three pints. Set them in a close glass eight days in the Sun, stir them every day. Give six or eight ounces four hours afore dinner, for fifteen or twenty days, and walk after it.

At first give a Steel-medicine to prepare. As, Take Steel-slings four ounces, put it in an Iron Crucible

cible or Ladle, then cast it into two pints of water of Hops, Crafs, Madder, Borage, or Spring-water: strain it. and do so seven times. Then, Take so many ounces of new Seel; and cast it into water as before: strain and add Syrup of Violets, Borage, or Honey of Roses four ounces; give three ounces in the morning after exercise. Prepare thus three or four times, and then use stronger.

After Steel use *Scorzonera* steep all night in Wine, give it in the morning. This hath cured Obstructions in many.

*Mercatus.* *Bezoar-stone*, saith *Mercatus*, opens Obstructions in my Experience, and resists Venom: give six or seven grains.

Steel is best Spring and Fall, purge, and exercise before and after it, that it may be better dispersed. Use Preparatives, Purges, and strengthners often, and for a long time, and change the forms, lest the Patient loath them.

If water spread about the body, cool the body and make it heavy. Use sweats, as Baths natural or artificial, of Mugwort, Calamints, Nep, Dantewort, Sage, Bayes, Rosemary, Mercury, Ivy, Briony-roots, Orris, Elicampane.

After purging and opening Obstructions, all the Symptoms will vanish; if not, see for the Symptoms of the Womb.

*The Diet.* Let the Air be temperately hot. The Meat of good juyce, and easie digestion. Pot-herbs and green Fruits must be avoided, Fish, Milk, Lettice. Make Sauce with Sage and Cinnamon. Drink Wine. Let Bread be well leavened, with Fennel-feed. Drink no Water nor Broths at first, and in the declination of the disease, use Exercise and Venery. Let sleep be moderate.

Question

Chap. 2.

Question 1. Whether may the Woman in this Disease be allowed the absurd things they long for?

They are Virgins or Women with child that long for such things, Virgins must not be allowed them, as Chalk, &c. For they will increase the disease.

Women with child must be pleased with fair words, to abstain from them: but if the appetite will not be allayed, rather grant them, than suffer an abortion or mark upon the Child.

Question 2. Is Motion and Exercise good in the Green-sickness.

They are better than idleness, which heaps up crudities. they raise the languishing heat in the Bowels, and help the nourishment to be distributed: therefore they are to be used before the disease be great, and in the declination they disperse the humors.

But use moderation, lest you weaken the body, or choak them. First therefore use Frictions, then watching, then more exercise after convenient purging.

Question 3. Whether is Venery good for Maids in the Green-sickness.

It is probable, and agreeable to Reason and Experience, that Venery is good. *Hippocrates* bids them presently marry: for if they conceive, they are cured. *John Langius* saith, This disease comes in the ripeness of age, or presently after virgin. Venery. *Lib. I. cap. 2.*

Venerly heats the womb, and the parts adjacent opens and loosens the passages, so that the terms may better flow to the womb.

But if there be a great Cacochymy, take it away before she be married, and then Venerly may do more then Physick. But use it not in the vigor of the Disease, or in weaknes.

Question 4. *Whether is Blood-letting good in this Disease?*

A Cachexy beginning with coldness of the whole Body, seems to deny bleeding; and because the crude humors are infault rather then blood. But *Hippocrates* adviseth bleeding at the first.

If it be a new disease, and comes from stopp'd terms, and blood abound that is stopp'd, and not turned into another humour, you may boldly bleed, provided the strength permit, and the passages be open. But in an old disease when crude Flegm abounds, bleed not, for it will increase the Disease.

### Chap. 3. Of *Symptomes from the Womb, and Mother-sits in general.*

IT is not to be expressed what miserable diseases Women are subject to: both Virgins and others from the womb, and its consent with other parts. For when terms or blood are stopp'd, there are great *Symptomes*: and while they putrifie, or get evil qualities the *Symptomes* are grievous, and almost unexpressible.

One woman may have divers *Symptomes* from the

the womb at the same time, when the seed and terms are mixed with other humors after they are corrupted, and there is more sometimes, and such noble substance as seed and terms being corrupted, are like poyson.

The consent with other parts, is from likeness of parts, nearness, or connexion of Vessels. And because the womb is membranous, it hath a great consent with the Membranes and Nerves. Also the parts adjacent are easily infected. And thirdly, it hath consent with all the Body by Veins, Arteries and Nerves.

It consents with the Brain by the Nerves, and Membranes of the Back-marrow. It consents with the Heart by the Arteries; with the Liver by the Veins, which are great in the Womb, and therefore the Blood and bad humors go back to the Liver. It consents with the stomach by Anastomosis in the Veins of the Mesentery, and by the Arteries through foul humors and vapors go from the womb to the Mesentery and Stomach.

It consents with the Spleen by the Arteries; therefore many Women that had not their terms enough in their youth, and have not blood are after Hypochondriack, and a Physitian can scarce distinguish these diseases of the womb and Spleen, nor cure them severally.

It consents with the Paps by Veins and Nerves, and the Heart, Diaphragma, Head, Brain, and all the Organs of sense and motion; with the Liver, Spleen, Stomach, Belly, Mesentery, Bladder, strait Gut, Back, Hips, Arms and Legs, and causeth *Symptomes*. As *Galen* saith the Mother and Hysterical passions in one name, but hath under it innumerable *Symptomes*.

*Gal. 6. de loc. aff. c. 39*

*Gal. de loc. aff. c. 5.*

Chap.

Chap. 4. *Of Suffocation of the Womb.*

**I**N this they seem to be strangled. And there are so many Symptoms at once, that it is impossible to define it by one. Sometimes there is only short breath; sometimes the animal actions are hurt, the whole Body is cold from a malignant vapor sent up from the womb.

*The Causes.* The immediate Cause, is a vapour malignant and venomous, sent up by the Arteries, Veins and Nerves that hurt the actions of the parts it goes to. This vapor is like air or wind, thin and little, but very strong, to get presently through the whole Body. It chiefly ascends to the Gullet, and causeth choaking, as eating of Mushrooms, Hellebore, and other poysons. There is often short difficult breathing, with Heart-ach, Vomiting, and Loathing. If the vapor go first to the heart, the motion of it ceaseth, and there is swooning, and she falls down. If it go to the Brain, the animal actions are hurt.

When seed and termes corrupt in the Womb with other bad humors, they breed this evil vapor; because they are the best substance, and the beginning of generation, they are worst when corrupted, especially seed do hurt the whole Body.

*Gal. cit. 1.* Sometimes it is in Women with child, when they have not their after-purging: but evil humors are left, and corrupt in the Womb.

The chief cause of this humor, is the trumpet of the womb and stones, the body of which is hollow and loose, the stones, being in Bladders, and have hollownes full of water, which in hysterical

sterical women is yellow and thicker than ordinary. This trumpet and the stones are often taken from the womb it self, when they are swollen with corrupt seed, and humors, and wind, and reach to the Navel: of which in the Chapter of Ascend of the Womb. *Vesal. de corp. human. Fabr. lib. 5. c. 15.*

This disease is breeding sooner or longer, as the matter is more or less, sometimes corrupt humors lie still, and if they be stirred, they send a venom or vapor to the whole body. Now in women subject to this disease, sweet scents to the Nose, or taken in, or anger, will move these humors and vapors.

They are according to the variety of the Symptoms and efficient cause, or venomous humors: for corrupt blood, especially seed, puts on another Nature. *The Difference.*

That Suffocation is at hand, it appears by laziness, weakness of the Legs, paleness, sad countenance, and the motion of something like a Ball in the Belly, with noise like Frogs, Snakes or Crows, so that some think it is devillish. There is also Belching, Yawning, Yexing, short Wind, Heart-beating, Loathing, Dulness, Laughter at the coming of the fit, from the vapor getting into the Membrane of the Breast, that tickle them: some cry, some both laugh and cry. *The Signs.*

These Symptoms increase when the fit comes, and the Jaws are closed, that she seems to be choaked, and sense and motion is gone or depraved. Some have Convulsions, some hear what is done about them, but cannot speak: the pulse is less, the whole body is cold, and the Eyes shut, as if they were dead.

When the fit declines, humors flow from the Privities, the Guts rmmble, the Eyes open, the Checks

Checks grow red, and the body warm, the animal actions return, and the Patient sighs, and comes to her self.

It is known to be from corrupt seed, if the terms are in order, and short breath, and low voice, Suffocation and Convulsions, and all Symptoms are then more vehement and at the end of the fit there flows a humour like seed out of the Privities. It is from the terms, if they be stopt, or flow not orderly; and if there be a discharge in the womb, it is neither from seed nor the terms.

*The Prog-  
nostick.*

1. If there come Swounding or a great Convulsion, or quenching of natural heat, it is deadly.

2. Suffocation from corrupt seed, is more dangerous than that which is from the terms mixt with melancholick humors.

3. The longer it lasts, and the worse the Symptoms, the more is the danger. It ceaseth in young Women when they begin to bear children.

4. The sooner the fit comes, the more you may fear the quenching of the natural heat by weakning of the Heart often; and if she foam at the mouth, she dies.

*The Cure of the Fit.*

In the fit you must discuss the malignant vapors that rise from the womb, and turn it from the principal parts, and you must evacuate the matter that breeds it, and prevent its return. Call upon her loud, pluck the hairs of her privities and Ears, make strong Ligatures and Frictions, cup the Legs, and Thighs, and Groyns: hold stinks to the Nose, as Partridge-feathers, burnt hairs, Leather, Horn, Castor, Assa-fœtilla, Galbanum, Oyl

Chap. 4. *Of Suffocation of the Womb.*

of Amber, Rue, the warts on Horses legs dried, and the powder upon coals burnt makes a Fume, which if taken in the nose, suddenly raiseth them.

Apply sweet Scents to the Privities, as Civet, Musk, Gallia and Alipta moschata, or powder of Cloves.

Or, Take *Storax calamita*, Benzoin, each a dram; *Gallia moschata* half a scruple, make Troches with Gum traganth, and let the Fume be taken into the Womb by a Funnel.

A Liniment. Take *Storax*, Benzoin, each a dram; *Gallia moschata* half a scruple, Civet four grains, liquid *Storax* half a scruple, with Cotton put it into the Womb.

Clysters do discuss wind, draw down the matter. Take the Carminative Decoction a pint, Eleluary of *Hiera* six drams, *Benedicta laxativa* an ounce. Oyl of Rue and Bayberries, each a dram. Use Womb-clysters and Pessaries to women that have known man. Take Eleluary of *Hiera* and *Diaphenicon*, each two drams; Turpentine half an ounce, Honey of Mercury an ounce, Castor half a dram, with Wool make a Pessary.

Oyl of Tin applied to the Navel, doth remove the fit.

Or Rue, Castor, and sneezing Powders. As Take white *Hillebore* half a scruple, long Pepper and Ginger, each half a dram: or put Oyl of Amber into the Nose and Ears.

Apply to the Womb this: Take Oyl of Rue, Bayes, each two ounces; Cummin-seed, Castor dissolved in Vinegar, each two drams; with Wax make a Liniment. Or use a Plaister of Galbanum, Castor, and Assa-fœtida.

A Compound distilled Water. Take Zedoary Parsnip-seeds, Lovage-root; each two ounces; Mirrh, Castor

Castor, each half an ounce; Piony-roots four ounces, Mistleto of the Oak gathered in the wain of the Moon three ounces, and water of Motherwort four ounces and half, Spirit of wine a pint and half, steep them eight daies, distil and give a spoonful with Tile-flower or Mugwort-water, or Oyl of Amber some drops. Or, Take Castor, Assa-fœtida, each a scruple; Pepper half a scruple, with Syrup of Mugwort, make Pills, give three.

*The Cure out of the Fit.*

First, prevent the Seed from corrupting in the womb; and if it be corrupt, evacuate it presently with Womb-Clyster and Pessaires; then disperse the reliques, and strengthen the womb. But first give a general Purge that is gentle often, and use things that prevent the breeding of Seed.

Strengthen with Plaisters and Ointment to the Region of the Womb. As, Take liquid Storax two drams, Avens, Agnus castus seeds, Angelica, each half a dram; Alipta Moschata a scruple, Oyl of Nard, Lillies, and white Wax, make an Ointment. Or, Take seeds of agnus castus a dram, all Sanders, each half a dram; white Rose-powder a dram, Tacamahacca a scruple, Amber two scruples, Alipta Moschata half an ounce, with Turpentine, Labdanum and Wax, make a Plaister. If she be a Virgin; let her be married.

If it be from Terms stopt, see in the Chapter of that.

This disease is neither from seed, nor blood, nor humors, if they be not corrupted after peculiar manner. If it be from the womb distempered, give the Infusion of an ounce of Briony root in white Wine once in a week for a year, at bed time: or this Hysterical Water.

Take

Take Lovage-roots, Piony, Angelica, Zedoary, each an ounce; Mistleto of the Oak gathered in the wane of the Moon two ounces, Mints, Balm, Calamint, Bettony, each a handful; Carrot, Parsnep-seed, Castor, each half an ounce; distil them in white-wine and water of Motherwort after eight daies infusion. Or, Take Briony, Valerian, Spignel, Angelica-roots, each half an ounce; Balm, Calamints, Penny-royal, Bettöny, each half a handful; boyl them in Wine, add Syrup of Mugwort an ounce, give it at thrice.

Vitriol of Iron one grain, with two grains of Sugar given in Wine some weeks, is excellent.

Or, Take Cummin-seed, wild Parsnep-seeds, each a dram; give a dram in powder. Or, Take Fœcula Brione two drams, Cumminseed, Parsnep-seed, each a dram; Amber half a dram, Cloves two scruples, Cinnamon a scruple, make a powder.

Pills. Take Castor a scruple, Assa-fœtida half a scruple, Mirrh, Galbanum, Sagapenum, each a scruple; with Honey of Mercury make Pills: take half a scruple or a scruple often. Or, Take Treacle or Mithradate.

Apply Plaisters or Liniments to the region of the Womb, thus: Take old Treacle half an ounce, Agnus castus seeds a dram, Oyl of Angelica and Cummin-seeds, each two drams; with Plaister of Barberries. Or make Ointments of the same.

Question 1. *What præternatural disease is this Suffocation of the Womb properly?*

Some say it is a cold distemper in quality changed; they say right, but coldness is not the chief Symptom. Others say it is respiration hurt by Syncope, or Convulsion. But it cannot be defined

L

by

by one Symptom. For sometimes the animal actions are hurt, and there is a Megrin, Delirium Convulsion, and sense and motion are gone.

Nor is it strange, that so small a vapor should bring such Symptoms, for it hath an occult venom in it which is strong, for it goes many ways, and to many parts.

*Gal. 6. de  
lo. aff. c. 5.*

Question 2. *What is the true Cause of the fits of the Mother?*

I say it is the malignant vapors that flie up from the womb; for it doth not work by a manifest quality, but by a venom which *Galen* saith is like that of a Torpedo, or Phalanx, or Scorpion, which are little in bulk, but do great mischief, being enemies to the vital spirits and heart, by which there is coldness all over, and short breath from the actions of the heart hurt. For when the heart is hurt, or the vital spirits, either suffocated or corrupted, there are no good animal spirits bred, and they not flowing to the nerves and muscles, hinder the motion of the breast. Also this malignant vapor is an enemy to the animal spirits, and makes doating and Convulsions when it gets to the brain.

The Cause of these vapors are corrupt seed and terms, for while they are in their proper vessels, they change not their nature. And the seed is not always pure, but mixed with evil humors, and the seed vessels are sometimes swollen and distempered. Moreover the corruption is from the womb in a peculiar manner: for as *Fernelius* saith, The place from whence comes life, is also the breeder of the most deadly poison.

Question

Question 3. *It is good to give Wine in a fit of the Mother.*

*Hippocrates* and *Avicen* quarrel about this. *I. De nat. mulierum.* The first allows Wine, because they are weak, and nothing sooner refresheth. But *Avicen* is for water, and forbids flesh, for they increase Seed and Blood.

But in the time of the fit, Wine is proper, and *Avicen* doth not speak of the fit but of the diet out of the fit, when it comes from plenty of seed and blood; nor will a little Wine in the time of the fit get presently to the Womb.

Chap. 5. *Of the Frenzie of the Womb.*

It is a great and foul Symptom of the Womb, both in Virgins and Widows, and such as have known man. These are mad for Lust, and invite men, and lie down to them, and it differs from salacity, because in that there is no Delirium.

It is an Immoderate desire of Venery, that makes women almost mad, or a Delirium from an immoderate desire of Venery: it is without a Fever, and with heat, and ends with madness. There are degrees in it, for modest women have it, but will not for shame declare it, and die of Consumptions. Others will not conceal it, but speak their thoughts bawdily, and follow men, and solcite them shamelessly, as *Hippocrates* writes in his Book of Virgins Diseases.

The immediate Cause is plenty of hot and sharp

sharp Seed against Nature, but next unto that which is natural; it is a little biting, swelling, and forcing Nature to let it out by lechery. The brain is only hurt by consent, and the animal actions by an external error, or too vehement object. The part first affected, is the womb in the Nymphæ, which grows hot, and swells, but the Nymphæ are not properly the seat of Venery, but the Clitoris, which was called by the same name anciently.

The heat and sharpness of Seed, is from the heat of the Womb that breeds it, from hot humors in the womb and hot blood.

The outward Causes, are hot meats spiced, strong wine, and the like, that heat the privities, idleness, pleasure, and dancing, and reading of bawdy Histories.

*The Signs.*

They find their lust to boyl at first, and for shame will not declare it: they are sad and silent and their eyes turn to and fro with lust, and if any speak of Venery, they blush, and the pulse changeth, when the brain consenteth, reason is perverted, and modesty is overcome, then they prate, are lustful, and angry; sometimes they cry or laugh without a cause: they follow men, and sollicite them for copulation. Some will lie with any one they meet.

*The Progno-  
stic.*

It is a sordid disease, curable at first: but if neglected, it turns to madness.

*The Cure.*

Let Virgins that have it, before reason is subverted, be in company with chaste Maidens, or be married, And be let blood to abate heat of blood and sharpness of Seed very often, there is no better remedy.

Then temper and evacuate the humors, if they be adult, and if there be madness, use stronger.

Then

## Chap. 5.

## Of Frenzie of the Womb.

Then have a Bath of Lettice, Willow, Water-lillies, Vine-leaves, Purslane, Venus-navel, red Roses, Violets, Water-lillies. Let her sit twice a day in it, and not sweat.

To take away the sharpness of the Seed, use Lettice, violets, Water-lillies, and things that quench seed by a secret quality, as Agnus castus Seed, Leaves and Flowers of Camphire hereafter.

As, Take leaves of Water-lillies, Agnus Castus, Willow, each three handfals; Lettice, Purslane, Venus-navel, each a handful; Lettice, Poppy-seed, the four great cold seeds, each half an ounce; Dill-seed two drams, Water-lillies a handful, Violets half a handful, beat them with juyce of Lemons, distil them after twenty four hours; add to every pint a dram of Camphire, give an ounce. Or, Take Agnus castus leaves, Rue, Willow, each two handfals; Mints, tops of Dill, each a handful and half; Water-lillies half a handful, Agnus castus seeds, Hemp, Coriander, Lettice-seeds, each half an ounce, beat them, and distil them with water, add a pint of juyce of Lemons, rectifie it to half.

An Emulsion. Take Lettice, and white Poppy-seed, and the four great cold seeds, each half an ounce; water of Lettice, Water-lillies, Willow, each four ounces; Syrup of Violets two ounces, Magistery of Coral a dram.

An Electuary. Take Conserve of Water-lillies, Violets, of Agnus castus tops, each an ounce; of Roses half an ounce, red Coral, Smaragds, each a dram; Coleworts and Lettice candied, each an ounce; with Syrup of Violets and Water-lillies, make an Electuary.

Or make Baths of the same. As, take tops of Agnus castus, Lettice, Rue, Water-lillies, Dill-tops, boil them, anoint with Oyl of Lillies, Unguent of

L 3

Roses



*Roses, with Camphire after that.* Or lay a Plaister of Mercury and Marsh-lentils to the breast and Loins. Lay a Plate of Lead to the Back, and give a Pessary of Juyce of Plantane, Purslane, Gourds.

These that work by an occult quality, are fittest for Nuns that must not marry: but they that will marry must forbear them, because they cause Barrenness.

Let diet be thin, and of little nourishment, no Eggs, Beef is good, and fresh Fish. Also Lettice, Purslane, Succory, Sleep little, think not of Venery, labour, and avoid Idleness.

Question, *Whether is Camphire cold or hot, or doth it quench Venery?*

It is hot, because it burns flames, is thin, pierceth, is sharp and bitter. But it hath cold effects, as curing of Burns and Inflammations, and hot Head-aches: but this is from the likeness of the substance, because it draws hot vapors to it, and discusseth, as Linseed-Oyl that cures burns. Nor hath it a double substance cold and hot, that may be separated.

*Exercit.*

104 sect. 8.

*Scaliger* denies it by Experience, to quench Venery: but if it be taken often, it doth. He tried it but once.

### Chap. 6. *Of the Melancholy of Virgins and Widows.*

**I**T is a Delirium with sadness, trouble and weeping, sometimes laughing, without a Fever.

It differs from others by the efficacy only of the efficient causes: for it hath divers pains besides sadness, especially on the left side, near the Heart in the Pap: this is by occasion at distance.

The Cause is a melancholick Vapor from a melancholick blood in the vessels near the Heart, that infects the animal spirits, hurts the Fancy, and so the reason. For melancholick blood abounding in the vessels of the womb, comes back to the great Arteries about the Heart, by the Arteries of the womb, and infects both vital and animal spirits, and causeth trouble of Heart and Delirium, while this Blood is quiet in the Arteries, there is no vapor that riseth: but when it is heated or stirred up by any cause, the Arteries about the back and spleen beat more than ordinary, and the vapors arise and trouble the Heart.

They are sad, and full of thoughts and trouble at the Heart, and cannot express their grief; all things are tedious to them: they weep and laugh without a cause: they sleep little, and with trouble and fear: they have a pain on the left side, and sometimes the left Breast: their jaws are dry. All which are the effects of a melancholick vapor, and when that is discussed, all cease. If it be old, it turns to Madness, and then they are first silent, then prattlers, and then they see Ghosts.

At first it is easier cured: but if it last long, and she resist not imagination, and will not rejoice with her Gossips, it is dangerous. They often despair and desire death, or hang themselves or drown themselves. If the manners are changed, it turns to madness.

Observe what progress the disease hath made. At first if blood be hot, open a Vein often in the

L 4

*The Cause.*

*The Signs.*

*The Prog. nostick.*

*The Cure.*

Arm,

Arm, if the terms be not stopt. If they be, bleed in the Ankles some dayes before they use to flow.

Let her be merry, and prepare and purge Melancholy, thus: Take *Borage* and *Balm-water*, each three ounces; *syrup of the Juice of Borage* and *Bugloss*, each an ounce and half. Mix them for two Doses, repeat them sometimes. Then purge Melancholy. As, Take *Senna* six drams, *Agarick* a dram and half, *Borage-flowers* and *Violets*, each a pugil; *Citron-peel* two drams, infuse them in *Rhenish wine* for six hours, strain them, add *Syrup of Violets* an ounce. Or, Take *Scorzoner* a roots two ounces, *Borage* an ounce, *Balm* a handful, *Senna* four ounces, *Agarick* half an ounce, *Citron-peels* 6 drams, *Zedoary* two drams, *Cordial-flowers* a handful, add half a point of the *Juyce of sweet-scented Apples*, and of *Borage* and *Bugloss*, steep them two daies, then strain them, add *sugar* and half an ounce of *Cinnamon*, make a *syrup*: give two or three ounces.

Also give *Cordials*, *Confection of Hyacinths*, species *Exhilerants*, and *Confection Alkermes*, to such as can bear it. Cure it as *Melancholy*, only the matter comes from the womb; therefore still regard that it dry not the body too much: but use a moistning Diet.

### Chap. 7. Of an *Epilepsie* from the *Womb*.

THIS Falling-sickness is worse than from other causes, because there are greater Symptoms: for that malignant vapor doth not only fall into the Nerves, but the Veins and Arteries.

The same malignant vapor that causeth suffocation, causeth this: for when it ascends by the Veins

### Of an *Epilepsie* from the *Womb*.

Veins and Arteries, it begets other diseases: but when it gets to the Nerves, or to the fountain of them, it causeth the *Epilepsie*. In some the whole body hath a Convulsion; in others some part only, as the Eyes, Head, Tongue, Hand or Leg, and the outward Senses are diversly taken. Some see not, some hear not, some see and cannot speak: some dote, and think they see strange things, some cry out, and know not why. All lose the sense of Feeling.

If the vapor be not very malignant, they return to their work after the fit, as if they had not been ill.

It is known by what hath been said: for here is not only a Convulsion, as in other *Epilepsies*: but divers Symptoms, as in Suffocation of the Womb. They seldom foam at the mouth, because the Brain is not so shaken as to cause foaming: nor is the vapor so fixed in the roots of the nerves, but they often do hear.

It is grievous, and hath grievous Symptoms: but it is not so bad as a true *Epilepsie*, And if you give proper Medicines, it never returns.

#### The Cure of the fit.

Use things as in Suffocation of the Womb or Mother fits; as *Rue* and *Castor* are good against both.

Also out of the fit, you must cure it as the Mother using things that respect the womb and the Head. As, Take *Piony-roots*, *Scorzoner*, *Mistletoe of the Oak*, each half an ounce; *Polipody of the Oak* an ounce, *Rue*, *Penny-royal*, *Calamint*, each a handful; *Seseli*, *Piony*, *Agnus castus* seeds, each three drams; *Carthamus-seeds* bruised half an ounce, *flowers of Rosemary*, *Sage*, *Stæchas*, *Borage*, each two pugils;

*pugils* : boil them to a pint and half, strain and add juice of *Betony*, *Tarrow*, *Mercury*, *Mugwort*, *Senna*, five ounces, *Agarick*, *Epithimum*, each half an ounce; *Rhubarb*, *Cloves*, each two drams; *Anise*, *Fennel-seed*, each three drams : boil strain with *Sugar*, and half an ounce of *Cinnamon*, make *Syrup*, give two ounces.

And these Pills twice in a week, a scruple or a dram an hour afore Supper. Take *Piony-roots*, *Senna*, each half an ounce; *Mugwort*, *Betony*, *Rue*, *Tarrow*, each half an handful, boil them, clarify the Decoction, and juice of *Mercury* an ounce, *Aloes* an ounce and an half, Let it settle, pour off the clear, add *Rhubarb* sprinkled with *Cinnamon-water* two drams, *Agarick* half an ounce, *Mastich*, *Epileptick-powder*, each half a dram; with *Syrup* of *Mugwort* make Pills.

To strengthen the Head and the Womb, and to mend its Distemper, Take *Fecula of Piony* a dram, of *Briony*, *Amber*, *Mistleto of the Oak*, each half a dram, of *Bezoar-stone*, *Mans skull*, each a scruple : make a powder, give half a dram with *Scorzonera* or *Tile-flower-water*, or with *sugar* make *Rouls*.

An Electuary. Take *Conserve of Balm*, *Tile-flowers*, *Rosemary*, *Lilly-convals*, *Scorzonera-roots* candied, each an ounce; *Diamoschu dulce* a dram, powder of *Agnus castus* seeds and *Piony-roots*, each two drams; with *Syrup* of *Stæchas*.

### Chap. 8. *Of Pain of the Head from the Womb.*

Many pains come from the Womb : but the chiefest and greatest are in the Head; all over, or on one side, or in the eyes.

Matter

Matter ascends to the Membranes of the Head The Causes  
the Veins and Arteries from the womb. It is vapor or humor from blood and humors; sometimes bad blood that is thin, goes from the womb- vessels to the great Vessels, and gets to the Head, and to the Membranes there, and causeth a stretching ulcerated, or pricking, or beating pain, when it is carried through the Arteries being full of blood.

They think their Head will be torn, and the Membranes, and it is behind in the Head, or when the terms flow, or are disordered from consent with the Womb. If it be from a vapour, there is no heaviness; and it ceaseth presently. If from a humor, there is heaviness. *The Signs.*

These pains are great and cause watching. We have spoken of the Head-ach : but here it is from the Womb; therefore consider what humors offend in the Womb, and let them be purged, and the distemper of the Womb amended, as we shewed in the distemper of the Womb. There is also a pain in the Loins, because bad humours go from the pains of the Womb and Arteries to the great Vessels, and so are sent by the Capillar-veins into the Membranes, and stretch them and cause pain : these humours must have proper purges. *The Prognosick.*  
*The Cure.*

Question. In what part of the Head is the pain that comes by consent from the Womb?

It is in the Crown before and behind; but chiefly behind, by reason of the joyning of the back with the Womb : for the womb is nervous, and consents with the Membranes of the brain by the Membranes of the Marrow of the Back, and so Nerves

Nerves suffer with Nerves, either by communication of matter or pain, and because the original of the Nerves is in the hinder part of the Head, women are more pained there than men, because of the Womb.

Chap 9 *Of the Diseases of the Heart, and beating of the Arteries in the Back and Sides from the Womb.*

**T**HE Heart beats, and the Arteries also, as we shewed in the Green-sickness, and it is by evil vapors sent by the Arteries to the Heart from the womb, that arise from the terms and evil humors gathered in the womb: and this is known by other Signs and Symptoms of a distempered Womb.

*The Cure.*

To discuss the malignant Vapors from the Heart, give Cordials, as in Chap. 3. Of Palpitation of the Heart; as aqua vitæ, Cinnamon-water, and Epithems, Bags and Liniments.

The Arteries also beat with the Heart, as in Widows on the left Hypochondrion and Back, where there is a great Artery, and the Artery that beats in the back, is part of the great Artery: they which beat in the Hypochondrion are the lesser splenitick and mesenterick branches; therefore the beating is more in the back than in the Hypochondrion: but both pulsations come from the same cause.

*The Causes.*

The Inflammation of the Arteries is the cause of this beating, when evil humors are sent from the womb into the great branches of the Artery, and

and there beat, the Heart being over hot. Sometimes the motion of this Artery is all the body over, and for a hot humor; the hot humors go to the heart, and cause a Fever: but because there is little putrifaction, it vanisheth presently. If the heat of the humors go to the brain by the arteries, there is madness. Some seek the cause in the veins, and say that the arteries suffer from the blood too in them.

You may feel it with your hand laid upon the Hypochondrion, and there are signs of a distempered womb, and melancholy from the womb, if heat continue in the arteries, and go to the whole body, it consumeth it. *The Signs.*

It is seemingly a small disease, but it is not without danger, because it comes from a bad *The Prog-* cause, that weakens the bowels. *nostrick.*

It is cured as melancholy from the womb, and stopping of the terms, and as Hypochondriack melancholy from the womb which follows. *The Cure.*

Chap. 10. *Of the Diseases of the Spleen, and the Hypochondriack Disease from the Womb.*

**S**OMETIMES the Spleen and the Hypochondrion suffer from the womb, so that you may doubt what disease it is.

It is from the womb by the arteries, the womb hath two: one from the preparing arteries, another from the Hypogastrick artery. That from the Hypogastrick goes almost to all parts of the Abdomen, and most branches of the spleen: therefore, when bad blood is bred in the womb, and gets

gets out of the arteries upward to the Hypogastrick artery, it gets easily from thence to the coeliack artery and to the Spleen, and the parts adjacent in the abdomen; and the sooner, because Nature useth to send bad humors to ignoble parts. These humors are gathered by suppression of Terms, which though they seem to be only in the veins, yet they get to the arteries by their Anastomosis. Therefore those Women that have hot blood and their terms flowed not orderly in their youth, are splenic, and Hypochondriack in their age.

*The Signs.*

It is known by a pain in the left side and breath to the throat, there is short breath, often belching, the belly is bound: they are sad and solitary. When thin blood grows hot, there is an inflammation over all the body, and chiefly the face which suddenly vanisheth, and there are other signs of Hypochondriack. These cannot indure sweet scents to their nose.

*The Prognostick.*

If it be not speedily cured, it turns to worse diseases, as the Schirrhous of the spleen.

*The Cure.*

The blood is commonly too hot, therefore open a vein, especially when it is from the terms stopt. You may also open the Hæmorrhoids, and then purge gently, and often with Pills of Tartar by *Quercetan*, of Ammoniacum, of Aristolochia or Birthwort by *Fernel*; or give Steel and things as in the Hypochondriack diseases, *lib. 3. part. 5.* and in the Chapter of Terms stopt, and Melancholy from the Womb.

### Chap. 11. Of the Distemper of the Liver from the Womb, and of a Beard growing by consent from the Womb.

The Womb hath many and great veins more than other parts. If then there be too much blood in them, it easily goes back to the hollow vein, and choaks the heat of the Liver, and so the liver is distempered according to the humor. It breeds crude & flegmatick blood, which scents over the body, causeth a Cachexy; and what diseases come by the Liver, are by consent from the womb, as in stoppage of the Terms and Green sickness.

*Hippocrates* speaks of a womans Beard in *Phae- 6. Epid. 8. aph.* *lib. 1.* for hairs have their beginning and growth from the reliques of the nourishments of the noble parts, that is from the excrementitious part of the blood. And if terms be stopt, and vitious humors that use to be evacuated with them, are sent over the body, they cause divers Diseases and Symptoms, and among the rest the body of a woman is made hairy, and she hath a Beard, which is rare.

### Chap. 12. Of the Diseases of the Stomach that come from the Womb.

Sometimes from consent with the womb, the appetite is lost, diminished, increased, or depraved

praved, or there is Hickets, or vomiting, belching, pain or head-ach.

*The Causes.* This is which malignant vapors, the way being large, rise from the Arteries of the womb, and go to the coeliack artery, and through the Hypogastrick. And if they are hot, they cause thirst; if cold, they hurt concoction, and many times cause strong symptoms from their malignity and occult qualities, whose causes are not known. Hence it is that women desire absurd things, as these vapors get into divers parts to the stomach.

*The Signs.* You may know when the stomach is affected by consent from the womb, because the Symptoms abate and return again, when the vapor comes to the stomach: there are also other signs of the womb distempered, and of the Spleen and Mesentery by the Vessels, of which the matter is sent from the womb of the Stomach.

*The Prognostick.* The Symptoms are worse when they come from the womb, than when they come from the stomach first; nor are they curable, except the womb be first cured.

*The Cure.* It is to be directed to the womb and stomach. For if it come only by consent, and there is no disease by propriety, when you have cured the womb, the stomach disease vanisheth of it self, if you do but strengthen the stomach.

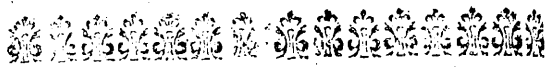
If the stomach be first affected, look only to that. Therefore first evacuate the humors that stick in the stomach, as we shewed in its Distemper with matter, or the humors will be infected by the malignant vapors. A Vomit is here proper.

To help the Womb, see for the Mother-fits and Suffocation, and for the Chapter of the Distemper of the Womb with matter, then strengthen

When the stomach thus: Take *Aromaticum Rosarum* a dram, *Extract of Angelica* half a scruple, *Oyl of Cloves, Cinnamon*, each five drops; with Sugar two ounces, make Roults. Or give Pills of Aloes and Mastich often.

M

THE



## The Fourth Book.

THE

### FOURTH SECTION.

## Of the Symptoms which are in Conception.

### Chap. I. Of the desire of Venerary hurt.

**T**Here are two Symptoms in Women about copulation. The first lechery lost, when she doth not willingly entertain a man, or cannot long endure him; or if she endures, she finds little or no pleasure, no more than if she were outwardly handled. The other is too great lust, as in Frenzy of the womb, when they cannot be satisfied by many men.

*The Causes*

The defect of appetite in lust is from defect of seed, or when it is cold, or there wants Spirits in the seed-vessels: The causes of want of seed are *Lib. 3. Part 9. Sect. 2. C. 1.* Sometimes it is from

Chap. 2. Of Barrenness and want of Conception: 131  
evil conformation of the Seed-vessels.  
Women discover this to their Husbands that *The Signs.*  
to the Physitian for counsel.  
These women have not fruitful seed, and *The Prog-  
nostick.*  
therefore are barren. *The Cure.*

For that, see *Lib. 3. Of Barrenness of Men*, where  
are Liniments and Oynments for the Loyns and  
Privities of women; but that she may take more  
pleasure, let the man anoint the head of his Yard  
with Civit, or Hens-gall, or the gall of a Pick-  
rel.

Too much Lechery not of it self hinders  
Conception, but wandring Lust that follows  
Lechery doth.

The Causes are the same with those of womb-  
Frenzy, as plenty of seed, sharpness, and com-  
motion, sharpness of seed from hot meat, and  
Medicines that provoke Lust, and sharp humors  
in the womb and seed.

Thus lust or lechery is abated by Medicines  
that extinguish the plenty of seed, and allay its  
sharpness.

### Chap. 2. Of Barrenness, and want of Conception.

**M**AN or Woman may be lustful, and copulate,  
and yet there may be no conception, or  
she may conceive too many, as Twins, or more,  
or have one conception after another, which is  
called Superfoetation, or she conceives a Mole  
or Monster.

Conception is of fruitful seed spent by a man,  
and mixed with a womans seed to perfection for  
the making of a child by the retentive and alter-  
ing

M 2

ring faculty of the womb; hence it is necessary that both seeds be fruitful, that is, hot, full of spirits, and well tempered, and a fit subject for a Soul, and that both spend at a time, and there mixed and retained together, to produce a child.

Also the sucking of the womb is necessary, and that it should lay it up and embrace it, so that there be no space between the seed, and the Womb. Sometimes the womb greedily snatcheth and embraceth the seed, but doth not keep it, but lets it come forth two or three days after, or keeps it to no purpose, and brings it not to action as in a false conception or mole. Moreover, there must be blood in readiness to get the Child, or besprinkle it when it is first formed, and to nourish it after.

Therefore if terms be wanting as in girls, or be stopt, or gone as in old Folk, expect no conception. If they flow not by reason of labour and too much exercise, the conception is not hindered, if there be but blood enough to form the Child. Hence it is that Women that are brought in bed, conceive again before they have their terms.

If all these be right: there is conception, otherwise she is barren, which is an impotency of the womb, that keeps it from sucking in of the seed, or from retaining, or from nourishing it, and bringing it into act.

*The Causes.*

The first is impotency in copulation, from the closing of the womb, of which before, or other evil conformation of the Privities, or an ulcer, or tumor in the neck of the womb. The second is the breeding of unfruitful seed from distemper of the Vessels and stones, or too tender and delicate,

cate a constitution. In men at eighteen, in women at fourteen, and men seldom get children after sixty, and women seldom bear them after sixty.

As for evil conformation to breed seed: some have wanted seed-vessels, or they were not in their places. Some women are barren by the first husband, and have children by the second, because there must be a certain proportion between both seeds: and if they be wanting, they are barren-which proportion is hard to be explained, and almost impossible: for we must not stay the first qualities, for there are occult qualities in seed, by which they agree or disagree.

The third cause is, when the womb sucks not in the seed, nor receives it in a right manner, as when the attractive faculty is hurt, or hindered by divers distempers of the Womb, or when a woman hates her husband.

Attraction is hindered by tumors or ulcers in the Womb, or by its being displaced, as Hippocrates: *They who being too fat, and conceive not, the mouth of their Womb is stopt up with the Cawl, and they conceive not till they are lean.* But the more probable reason of not conceiving, is the matter of the seed turning into fat.

The fourth cause is, the retention of the seed hurt by a moist distemper, then the Womb is weak, and the fibres are loose, so that it cannot contract it self to retain; and the seed by reason of its sliminess, cannot stick there. Also if the Womb be too thick, not fleshy and soft, and be not sprinkled with blood, as it is in some by birth which makes them barren, and in some after they cease to conceive.

If the orifice of the womb gape after hard tra-

*Falix. Plat. lib. 1. obser. tit. e vitalis minus defect.*

*5. Apt. 45.*



vel and abortion, by which the fibres are loosned and weakened, and the retention of the seed hurt. And if a woman after Copulation cough, neeze, cry out, dance, or be angry, or frighted, the same may be.

The fifth cause of Barrenness, is the hurt of the altering faculty, which brings in the forth and act into seed: for if there be not a due proportion between the womb and the seed, there is Barrenness, as Seeds are choaked in Marshy ground, or die, or are burnt in dry and sandy ground: so mans seed is suffocated in a moist womb, and dried up in a hot. Hippocrates speaks of the true proportion of the womb, as it is fit to cherish this or that seed, thus: *Women that have thick and cold wombs conceive not, and they whose womb is too moist: for they quench the seed. Not do they conceive that have dry and burning wombs: for the seed is corrupted in them for want of nourishment. They who are of a mean temper between these, are fruitful.*

The last cause of Barrenness, is want of Menstrual-blood, which is necessary for the first formation of the child. Therefore Nurses that have much milk conceive, because the blood is carried to the breasts.

Therefore all these causes are reduced either to impotency in Copulation, or distemper of the Stones and Seed-vessels, or evil conformation, or a cold and moist distemper of the womb, which cannot attract, detain, and alter the seed; sometimes a hot and dry distemper that cannot nourish the seed, or from the enlarging of the Orifice after Child-bearing, or from Humors, or being displaced, or the straitness of the Vessels, or want of Terms, or too many.

Hence

Hence we may gather, that barrenness is oftner from a fault in the women than the men: for in men, there is nothing required but fruitful seed spent into a fruitful womb. But women besides the meeting of their own seed, must receive, retain and nourish the mans: and afford matter for the forming of the child, in which divers accidents happen, and any of these will cause Barrenness.

Mark also in these kinds of causes, that some do not properly cause barrenness: but only hinder Conception for a time, as the closing of the womb, smalness of the Privities; these do not simply cause barrenness.

Some bring other external causes, as eating the heart of a Deer, or if she wear Jer about her, or if Harts-tongue be hanged about her bed: if she walk over the Terms of another, or tread upon them unawares, or anoint with them, or put the juyce of Mints into her womb. *Joa. Anglicus cap. de steril.*

Some are born so, from a fault in the womb: The Difference. others are not simply barren, but in respect of the man, and when they have another Husband, are fruitful. Some are barren till the constitution of the womb be changed. Some bring forth at first, and then by some fault grow barren.

How shall we know that a woman is barren? *The Signs.*  
First see if the fault be in the man or woman, *Lib. 3. Of Sterility in Men.* For women see if they are apt to venery or not, or receive the Yard fitly. 2. Search if she hath good seed answerable to the man, or whether she hath used quenchers of seed. You may know that she spendeth little or no seed, if she hath little or no pleasure in the act. Unfruitful seed, is known by a distemper in the womb, a cold and moist distemper, the

M 4

the signs whereof are mentioned; a foul body shews the same: for good seed cannot be made of bad blood.

It is hard to find whether the two seeds have the right proportion, or the womb agree with the mans seed. Yet temperate with temperate are very fruitful, because they are both of a good constitution. But intemperate couples are barren: but if one temper be good, it may mend the other, and she may conceive.

If it come from a Medicine that destroys the seed, she will tell. If Inchantment be the cause, though they love: yet they cannot copulate. Or whereas they loved each other, now they fall out without a cause.

Ask the woman how her womb doth attract, retain, and cherish the seed. If it have a tumor, or have matter or not? Whether there be a natural hereditary imperfection? Enquire concerning her Family, if many were barren, whether she hath had hard travel or abortion? whether the seed comes away presently after, or at a distance, after some days; if so, then the womans seed is unfruitful, or there is a distemper in the womb that keeps it from cherishing the seed.

If the Terms be wanting, they are Viragoes, and have hair on their Chins, or they are fat, and seed turns into fat; or they are very lean, because they want blood.

s. Aph. 59. Hippocrates proves Barrenness thus: Put a Fume (saith he) under the coats of a Woman, and let her be close cloathed about, and if the scent come to the Nose, she is not barren; and he bids you put Garlicke cleansed into the womb, and if she smell of it at the mouth she is fruitful.

The Prognostick. A natural bad disposition that causeth Barrenness

ness is not curable; Hippocrates saith, That Barrenness from Ulcers is hard to be cured. A woman that conceives not from disagreement with her husbands constitution, by another husband, or in time may be cured, or some distemper that causeth sterility may be mended with Physick.

Take away the causes, amend the distemper of the womb, whether with matter or without matter, is to be mended, which causeth either no seed, or that which is unfruitful, or not convenient. see Part I. Sect. 2. Chap. 1. *The Cure.*

Take Medicines of an occult quality are best. As; Take Rocket-seed, Siler montane, each half a dram; Ivory-shavings, Cinnamon, Nutmeg, each a dram; Musk (in such as may) three grains, white Sanders three drams, make a Powder: give a dram with Wine:

Or, Take Species Diamoschu, Diambra, each a dram; the Matrix of a Hare, a Bores-stones, and the Tard of a Stag, each half a dram; Nutmeg, Cinnamon, Cloves, Rocket-seed, wild Parsnep-seed, each a dram; Musk, Amber, each four grains; with Sugar as much as all, give two drams in Wine.

A Confection. Take sweet Almonds, Pistachaes, Pine-Nuts, Hazel-Nuts, each an ounce; Citron-peels, Ginger, Cloves, Cinnamon, each half a dram; Rocket-seed two drams: give a spoonful at bedtime.

Or make this March-pane. Take sweet Almonds four ounces, Pine, Pistachaes, Hazel-nuts each two ounces; Diambra, Diamoschu, each a dram; Ivory half a dram, Cinnamon half an ounce.

An Electuary. Take Conserve of Rosemary six ounces, Dogs-stones candied two ounces, Orobus, Schinks-reins, Bores-stones, Sows-wombs, Deers-pri-vities, Ivory, Turnep-seed, Fennel, Nettle-seed, Rocket,

et,

ket, Clary, wild Mustard, each two drams; Pine-nuts, sweet Almonds, each half an ounce; Diamoschu dulcis a dram, Oyl of Nutmeg by expression two drams, with Syrup of Bettony make an Electuary. Or use Triphera without Opium.

Or use Baths, Incessions, Fomentations, Fumes, and Baths after Terms for five days.

Take Briony, Masterwort-roots, Mercury, Mugwort, Penny-royal, Marjoram, Bayes, Sage, Motherwort, Juniper-berries and tops, make a Bath.

Or use Sulphur-baths of Allum, Niter, Bitumen; These do much good.

A Fume. Take Labdanum, Storax, Calamite, Benzoin, each two drams; Wood Aloes a scruple, Musk six grains, with infusion of Tragant made in Rose-water, make Troches.

Make Pessaries of green Mercury and Motherwort. Or, Take Mastich, Storax liquid, each half an ounce; Balm, Nep, Mercury, each a dram; Cloves, Nutmegs, each half a dram; Civet half a scruple, with Wax make a Pessary. After Baths and Fumes, anoint the Pecten and Navel with this: Take Oyl of Keir half an ounce, Oyl distilled of Marjoram a scruple: of Cloves half a scruple, of Nutmegs by expression a dram, Storax liquid two drams, Civet and Musk, each six grains; with Wax make a Liniment. After bathing, let her have a Bag upon her Belly, of Balm, Calamints, Mints, Motherwort, and Wine. Let her wear Plaisters upon her Loins and Perinæum, till the week before her Terms. As, Take the Plaister for the Mother an ounce, Storax liquid, Caranna, each two drams; Gallia moschata half a dram, Oyl of Cloves half a scruple, of Nutmegs by expression a dram, with Oyl of Keir, make a Plaister. If the womb be too loose, and Slippery, use Clysters of Juyce of Mercury, with Honey

Honey-baths, Pessaries, Fumes, and other astringent Topicks that strengthen.

If the mouth of the womb gape, make a Decoction in Wine of Mirtles, Mastich, Wood-Vines, Olives, Wormwood, Cypress-roots, Comfrey, Snakeweed, Cinquefoyl, Red Roses, Pomegranate-flowers, foment the Privities, or with powder of Mastich, Frankincense, Allum, Wood-Aloes make a Fume.

Other Diseases are to be cured, as before shewed.

Let it be to increase seed, of much good juyce. *The Diet.* In the time of Copulation, avoid passions, anger, sadness, fear. Let love be invited, and if it burn, there will many Spirits flie to the womb and Privities.

### Chap. 3. Of Barrenness for the time and Conceiving seldom.

Some Conceive the seventh, eighth, or ninth year after wedding: some presently, but not after the first any more, or not in many years after.

If Virgins marry afore fourteen, they conceive not; or if the constitution of the womb be bad, or the Seed. Some conceive not from the disagreement of Seeds, till their constitution be changed. *The Causes.*

They who want Terms, or have them disorderly, or are sickly, seldom or never conceive with child, or have had hard Travel, or a dead child. Some are weakned, so that after the first child, they have no strength to conceive. *The Signs.*

All these will be related: whether she be married

ried too soon, or had hard travel, or abortive, or had a dead child or a Mole. If these were not, the seed and womb have not a just proportion with the mans, but it may be altered by age.

*The Prognostick.*

If the womb be much hurt after hard travel, or any thing turn in it, or broken, they seldom conceive again. And if a woman marry at a ripe age, and have no remarkable Disease, and conceive not presently, she is not to be accounted barren, because some private indisposition hinders Conception, which after may be altered, and she may prove fruitful.

*The Cure.*

A woman that marries too young, after she hath once conceived, and then ceaseth, must use Venery sparingly, till she grow older, that she may recover the strength she lost in her first travel. And if a woman marry at ripe years, and conceives not by reason of the driness of her Womb, let her use Baths, Fomentations and emollient Pessaries. If she conceive not from weakness strengthen the womb, and let her not use Venery often.

If Virgins be sick from seed retained or terms, let them marry. But if there be a fault in the Liver or Spleen, or the whole body, that may be encreased by Venery, it is better that they be cured before they be married. And if they cannot be cured, let them not be married.

If the womb be distempered by Birth or a Disease, cure it as in diseases of the womb. If it be from a Mole or Flux of blood, cure it as it hath and shall be shewed.

If it be from a dead child, first cleanse it with juyce of Mercury, and then put Treacle or Mithridate dissolved into the womb, or with a Pessary: or give them outwardly.

Chap.

### Chap. 4. Of Conception, and Forming of the Child.

Conception is an action of the Womb, after fruitful seed both male and female is received, mixed, and nourished, and its strength is stirred up to do its office. Seed and Coëma differ, seed is that which comes from both male and female, but Coëma is that which is mixed of both, and is called Conception, which produceth a Child.

This Conception is presently, when two seeds meets in the womb, in less than seven hours after they are spent, if the heat of the womb preserve them, Nature is not idle a moment, but presently falls to conformation. Therefore Hippocrates saith, that the beginning of Conception is to be reckoned from the day that the seed is retained, and if she conceives not from the weakness of the seeds or womb, the seed will fall out in seven days; for Hippocrates saith, That Conception and Abortion are judged in the same time, as a disease, health and death are judged. And Aristotle saith, If seed remains within till the seventh day, there is certain Conception. *Lib. de genit. tim. partu. 3 de hist. ani. c. 3.*

As for Formation, the Soul lying in the seed, makes its own house, for all acknowledge a forming faculty, and you must then suppose there is a substance from whence this faculty flows. And through Aristotle saith, that seed is a living creature in power; not that there it is not the essence of the Soul in the seed, and that is not a living creature in respect of the first act; but because it is not come to the second act, for want of fit Instruments, which being perfected, it hath the second

cond act and all its operations, which for defect of Organs, it cannot produce.

There are divers opinions of the time of Formation, they are best that say the membranes are first made, which wrap the child with the Navel-vessels, by which it is joyned to the Mothers womb, and receives nourishment for the child. Then all other parts are made sooner or later, as the child requires for dignity or necessity.

We intend here to speak of womens diseases. Therefore there are three things required for the Formation of a Child. 1. Fruitful seed from both parents, in which the Soul remains that hath a forming quality to make its own habitation. 2. The mothers blood is required to enlarge the Child to perfection. 3. There is required a good constitution of the womb to nourish the seed, and stir the concealed force. If these three be right, there is a child that is found and perfect, that will be born: but if any of these be wanting, there are Twins or more, and other faults, of which in order.

### Chap. 5. *Of the Generation of Twins, and many Children.*

Nature hath ordained that a woman should conceive but one child, in these and other Countries especially, and that every year; yet in many places she hath more, one had five at every Birth, twenty at four lyings in. *A. Margaret* the Countess of *Holstein*, in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the Seventh, had three hundred sixty four at one labour. And another Countess in the time of *Frederick* the Eleventh, had five hundred

### Chap. 4. *Of Conception and forming of the Child.*

hundred and fourteen Children at once, being Boys: these are so seldom, that they seem incredible.

I speak nothing of the Causes of such monstrous Productions, but of Twins, or of three, or four. It is certain they are got at one time: and this differs from Superfoetation, which is at many times. And you must not impute it to the divers Cells of the womb: for women have no such Cells, but only a Line that divides the left-side from the right: but it comes from the division of the seed into divers parts, and the least forming force in the side is compleat, and makes a Child of every part of it. And because the cavity of the womb cannot admit so many parts of seed, being no bigger than a Bean; and if it do admit them, how can the seed be divided at one copulation into so many parts? I suppose that such Women have naturally a larger Womb, so that much seed is divided. And as Twins are begot at the same time, so they have but one Placenta, or part that receives the Navel-vessels of both, but they have their several Coats.

It is hard to know whether a woman have conceived Twinns, only their belly is not even, but divided with seams and wrinkles; and the weight is commonly greater, and the motion is not one nor alike.

If a woman have two Children, and be weak, she is in danger in her travel. Twinns of one Sex are more lively than of both Sexes. And one is by experience weaker and shorter lived than the other.

Chap.

## Chap. 6. Of Superfetation.

**I**T is seldom that a Woman hath many children at divers Copulations, but it is sometimes and is called *Superfetation*, that is, a new conception after the former, Though *Hippocrates* writes *5. Aphor. 15.* That the mouth of the Womb after Conception is so shut that you cannot put in a Needles point, yet a woman with child may take such pleasure after, that she may a little open the womb to receive seed again, and draw it in, which may form another child.

*The Causes.* Therefore the cause is the pleasure the Woman hath, which opens the womb again to attract seed. And it is necessary that the seed received be in its proper membrane, and peculiar receptacle.

*The Differences.* These come sometimes sooner, sometimes later; sometimes the same day or the following, sometimes long after. Sometimes they have a third *Superfetation*, so that they have two living children, and one mischance.

*The Signs.* It is known only by the motion of the Infant when it is conceived long after the first.

*The Prognostick.* It is dangerous for the Mother, for fear of abortion, and for loss of much blood by two births at no great distance of time.

*The Cure.* It is best to leave the whole work to Nature, and Women ought to take heed of *Superfetation*; therefore after they have conceived, let them meddle no more.

Chap.

## Chap. 7. Of the ill Formation of the Child.

**I**N the Formation of the Child, there are divers Symptoms. 1. In the weakness of the child. The parts are more or fewer to which you may refer *Hermophrodites*. 3. The parts are greater or less, as *Dwarfs* or *Gyants*. 4. There is some out of place or shape, as *Histories* shew abundantly.

You must find the Causes in the seeds, terms, womb, and error in Formation: the Cause of these is the action hurt of the forming faculty. This is not always, from it self, but from the unfitness of the matter, and fault in the place which keeps from the intention: for actions of active things are not but in a disposed patient. Sometimes there is an extraordinary cause, as imagination, when the Mother is frighted, or imagineth strange things, or longeth vehemently for some meat which if she have not, the child hath a mark of the colour or shape of what she desired, of which there are many examples.

But I doubt whether all errors in Formation, depend together upon the imagination; for the spirits and humours are troubled by the Passions of the mind, and so flow forceable immediately to the womb or other part, and this disturbs the forming faculty in its work. Also the forming faculty being overcome with plenty of humors, or wanting spirits that are gone another way; may by chance make an ill shape; therefore the passions of the mind are the first causes of error in Formation, and imagination helps by stirring

*The Causes.**Authoris sententia*

N

up

up the appetite. These are the common errors of Formation.

Others are determinate errors, not simply from the imagination by the passions which have no determination to such a thing; but no other cause can be besides the imagination: but how she directs the former faculty for the producing of such effects, it is hard to be understood, but there must be some imagination: and the forming faculty, that it may impart the species sent from the external senses to the forming faculty.

And this is the cause of the consent of the upper and lower faculties: for the soul is the same in the whole body, and every where fitted with the same faculties: but it doth not exercise all in all parts, but by the proper determinate Organs or Instruments.

And though the child hath its soul, yet while it is in the womb, it depends upon the soul of the mother, as the fruits partake of the life of the tree while they are upon it, therefore it is probable that whatsoever moves the faculties of the soul in the Mother, may move the same in the Child. Hence it is that while the forming operateth in the seed and womb of the mother, if any species be sent to the imagination of the mother, which she strongly conceives, it may make an impression upon the Child, yet every imagination cannot make this impression, but that which makes a great admiration or terror in the mother when the forming faculty is at work, as when she begets one with six fingers, she brings forth the like, or when she produceth hair, where it should not be, or the likeness of a beast in any limb, or when she seeth any thing cut or divided with a cleaver, she brings forth a divided part, or a Harelip.

Chap.

## Chap. 8. *Of a Child turned into a Stone.*

John Albofius Doctor at Senon, and Simeon Provarcher of Lingo, Physitian of Senon, writ of this in French and Latin.

I shall give my opinion with others.

Two things are to be observed in this wonderful History; First why the child in the time of travail being dead in the womb, did not stink as is usual, or kill the mother suddainly, or was not cast out by degrees being rotten? Secondly, By what force the child was turned into Stone?

For the first, The mother lived twenty eight years after she had this child; therefore it is not credible that the womb was so cold, that it might hinder putrefaction, as some think. It seems more probable to be, that these questions explanation depend upon one principle; for the cause that made the stones hardness, kept the child from putrefaction, but what that is, it is obscure.

Many fly to the efficiency of the first qualities, others to driness, others to coldness, others to both. I acknowledge heat, cold and driness to be helping causes for breeding of Stones in mans body; but the chief cause is a stone breeding juyce, or spirit, of which I have spoken at large.

The principles of Generation were weak in this child, and impure, and this stone breeding juyce was mixed with the blood in the humors; hence it is, that it was not born alive, as in a mole bred in the womb, which women have till they are old and die with it, and yet it stink

N 2

nos

no more then stones bred in most parts. But there is but this History of such a Birth.

### Chap. 9. Of a Mole.

IT is flesh and Mass without bones or bowels, gotten of an imperfect conception instead of a child. The Latins call it a Mole from the weight, because it is troublesome to Women, as a Millstone in Latin called *Lapis Molavis*.

*The Difference.*

Sometimes it is unshapen flesh without bones, only full of veins, with a skin over it, and nothing within, but like the Parenchyma of the bowels. Sometimes it is membranous and fibrous, without shape. Sometimes it is long, round, or like a quarry of glass, or like a brute Beast. Some have brought forth three Moles like mens yards.

*Pet. Salis diu. in an- not. in anti- marum.*

Some are like congealed blood, or the Placenta of the womb, into which the navel-vessels are inserted; some grow and are nourished, and some have an obscure sense. Sometimes they are sent out alone, sometimes with or before the child, of which there are many Histories. Some bring forth Monsters for Moles.

*The Causes.*

It is from the error of the forming faculty, but the Cause of that is obscure. I suppose it is from both seeds, when the forming faculty is weak, and the seed little and not good, and overcome by much blood, and can make only veins and membranes and not a whole child. Sometimes it is in Widows only from their own seed and blood.

A Mole is sooner bred when the blood is impure, and unfit to nourish, and is made when they copulate in the flowing of the terms that are unclean

Chap. 9.

It is neither from heat nor cold principally, but from the error of the forming faculty.

They are hard to be known before the fourth month, then they are known by such as can distinguish between the motion of wind and a child.

*The Signs.*

If a woman turn from side to side, it falls like a stone to that side she lies on, and is heavy. If she have any motion, it is trembling and beating, with contraction and dilation like a Spunge. If after the time that the child should move, there be no motion, and the belly swells, and there is no sign of a Dropsie, it is a sign of a Mole.

Thirdly, In women with child, there is Milk about the fourth month, but in a Mole the breasts swell, but there is no true milk. They are more pined and faint, and have more pain in their back and groins.

If it be with a quick Child, it is hard to be known, but it is known by its weight in the womb, which she perceives when she gets up to walk, or moves from side to side; some are then strong and well coloured.

It hurts the womb and whole body: if it be divided, it is less dangerous: when it is soft, it is cast on the third or fourth month. Sometimes it ulcerates or tears the womb, and causeth great bleeding. Some have been cast out or drawn out without danger: some grow old with them in, and find no inconvenience but the weight.

*The Prognostick.*

To prevent, take heed of Venery in the terms, or before the terms, or when the body is foul or obstructed, or the womb.

*Fabr. cont. 2 obser. 55. The Cure.*

When it is, take it away presently with things that send forth a dead Child. Hippocrates sheweth the Cure in few words, *First soment the whole body, &c.*

*1. De morb. mulier.*



Therefore if she be plethorick, let blood largely in the foot at divers times.

Then purge often with strong Physick. Take *Althæa*, *Lilly-roots*, each half an ounce; *Allbea*, *Mercury*, *Pellitory*, *Brank*, *ursine*, each a handfull; *Chamomil*, *Melilot* flowers, each half a handfull; *Fenugreek* and *Linseed*, each six drams; boyl them in Broath to a pint; add sweet Butter, Oyl of sweet Almonds, *Lillies*, each an ounce; make a Clyster, repeat it often.

To Conquer all Infirmities, Study my Sennertus, Platerus, Barthol. and Riolanus of the last editions.

Make Baths, Liniments, Fomentations, then move the Terms with *Dittany*, *Birchwort*, *Briony*, &c. Take *Briony*, *Birchwort*, each half an ounce, *Asarum* two drams, *Rue*, *Savin*, *Mugwort*, *Dittany*, *Penny-royal*, *Motherwort*, each half a handfull; *Elder* and *Chamomil*-flowers, each half a handfull; *Linseed* and *Fenugreek*-seeds, each half an ounce; boyl them to a pint, add *Hære* an ounce and half, *Traches* of *Alkandal* a dram, *Oyl* of *Rue* and *Keir*, each an ounce and half; make a Clyster, of the residue make a Cataplasme for the belly.

Of this Pessary. Take *Traches* of *Mirrh*, *Galbanum*, *Opopanax* dissolved in wine, each two drams; *Sombread* roots a dram, *white Hellbore* half a dram, with juyce of *Rue*.

If these will not do, let the Midwife take it out with her hand, if it be half rotten.

Or leave it to Nature which doth it in time.

To stop the flux of Blood after a Mole is taken out, use strings against overflowing of the Terms. As, Take *Plantane*, *Sheapheards-purple*, *Bramble*, *Oak leaves*, *red Roses*, each a handfull; boyl them in steeld water, then take *Barley-bran* two ounces, *Pomegranate-flowers*, *Cypress-nuts*, *Pomegranate-peels*, *red Roses*, *Comfrey-roots* in powder each an ounce; *Frogs burnt*, *Bols-Sanguis Draconis* each

each half an ounce with the Decoction aforesaid, and a little Vinegar, make a Cataplasme for the Region of the womb. Take away pain with Anodynes mentioned in pain of the Womb; keep up the strength with meat of good juyce.

Question. whether a Mole be without the company of a Man, and without his seed?

To speak freely of this which many doubt; I suppose that many are made of a weak mans seed, mixed with the Womans seed, and much blood; But Histories confirm that Widows have had them without mans seed, but not of the shape with the others. And being voided they melted being in the air, into water.

I think Virgins cannot have them but from wantonness, or in sleep they may spend their seed; but because it is weak, and the blood necessary for formation, neither is drawn by the womb nor flows to it of its own accord, as it doth in those that have had children and the vessels of the womb in Virgins are straiter than in Widows, and others, that have had children. Therefore though the seed of Virgins flow into the womb, yet they cannot have a Mole for want of blood, which is necessary for the forming of the same. This is to be understood of Moles which are not vital, for vital Moles, that have some life, cannot be got in Virgins or Widows, without the seed of Man.

### Chap. 10 Of Monsters.

Histories tells of many Monsters brought forth by Women. We spake of Worms, Sc &

Sect. 2. Chap. 8. They are like Toads or Mice, or Fish. *Gordonius* saith, it is usual in *Lumbardey*, *Lycosthenes* saith, and others also, That Serpents, Dogs, and other Monsters with parts like brute beasts have been brought forth.

Par. 7. cap. 12. liij.

In appen. *Gasper Baubin* speaks of one *Anne Tropovin*, *Franc. Ros.* which 1575. brought forth two Serpents with her child; In Harvest, hot weather, she had drunk water in a Brook in a Wood near *Basil*, where she thought she drunk the spawn of a Serpent; for a little after that, her belly swelled, and three months after she was big with Child, and the Serpent grew as the Child did. Her belly was so big that she carried it in a swathing band. She was delivered at last of a lean male Child, and (because they suspect Worms or Snakes from the gnawing and strange motion he felt that year.) they put a bason of milk under her, and when they expected an after-birth, out came a Serpent which she saw, and perceived another coming forth, they were all an ell long, and as thick as a child's arm. Thus *Baubin*, and he speaks of others, if you please to peruse them.

A Monster is that which is either wholly, or in part like a beast, or that which is ill shaped extraordinary.

The Causes. Histories witness that a Monster may be from humane seed, and the seed of a beast. It is seduced, for the forming faculty doth not err of it self, but is seduced by the imagination, or frustrated of its ends, from a fault of the Spirits, the heat or matter. Therefore imagination is the cause of Monsters. For Histories mention, that women with child, by beholding men in vizards, have brought forth Monsters with horns, and beaks, and cloven feet. The same is when Spirits,

or heat, feed or blood, are weak or little. And though Doctors cannot cure Monsters, they are to admonish women with child not to look upon Monsters, and to strengthen their spirits and heat, and to keep the seed and blood tight, and not to allow copulation in time of their terms, lest any monstrous Birth should be from such and impure blood.

### Chap. 11. Of false Conception, and Swelling.

False Conception or Gravitation is, when the terms are stoppt, and the Belly swells, and there are signs like those of a true Conception, when they think themselves with Child, and as *Hippocrates* saith, *They believe not to the contrary till ten months are past.*

The Causes are wind in the womb, or watery matter, or thick flegm.

These are bred from sickly seed retained, upon which Nature works in vain: or from a fault in the terms that corrupts the seed, and breeds bad turners. The like appears in Virgins when they begin to have their terms, but it is discovered by pain.

The terms flow not as in a true Conception, but in this there is pain of the head, loyns, belly, and groyns, of which *Hippocrates* saith thus: *They have a false conception without terms appearing, with a swollen belly, have the head-ach, and there is no milk in their breasts, but what is like water, and very little.* Moreover the belly swells sooner than in a true Conception; their colour changeth, their face and feet swell; they loath meat, faint, and

Cause p. 11  
f. c. 2. 10.

The Signs.

2. Prorbet.

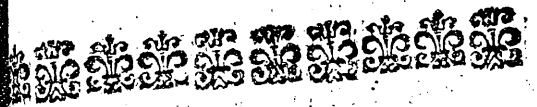
and have a depraved appetite. The surest sign is the time of Child-bearing being past.

*The Prog-  
nostick.*

*The Cure.*

They are commonly barren, or have ulcers in their Privities.

It is cured by evacuation of the matter in the Womb with proper Medicines, as in the Chapter of the Distemper of the Womb with matter, and of Inflation of the Womb and Drop sic.



THE  
FOURTH BOOK,

THE  
SECOND PART.

THE  
FIFTH SECTION

Of the Government of  
Women with Child, and  
preternatural Distempers in  
Women with Child.

THE

Chap. I. *Of the signs of Conception.*

**I**F she keep the seed, it is a sign she hath Conceived, and a man may know that the seed is kept, if he find in Copulation that his Yard is sucked and drawn by the womb, and the Privities are not moist. And if she perceives little or no seed to come forth again, and grow chill and quiver, and perceive a twitching in her womb, from the great delight: and the mouth of the Womb closeth, and the Terms stop.

But

But they are deceived, when they count or reckon from the stoppage of the terms. For some have their terms twice or thrice after they have conceived, and some have them all along without hurt.

The chiefest sign of Conception is, when there is at first loathing of meat, pewking, Pica or preternatural appetite and vomiting. And when they hate that they earnestly affected, or faint when they think of them.

About the fourth month, the Child moveth, which is not in a Mole, the breasts as yet that swell with milk, and the last are the surest signs. From the face and urin there is no certainty.

5. Aphor.  
42 & ibi.  
48.

Hippocrates teacheth us to know whether it be a Male or Female: If she be with Child of a Boy, she is better coloured; but pale if of a Girl. And Boys lie on the right side, and Girls on the left in the womb.

Chap. 2. Of the Government and Diet of Women with Child.

The Diet is either for such as are sound, or as have diseases.

Aphor. 52.

As for the Air, Hippocrates saith, if there be a wet warm winter with southerly winds, a dry spring with Northern winds, they who conceive in the spring abort upon any small occasion. Or if they bring forth, their children are weak and sickly or die. Let her avoid all evil scents, as of Rue, Pennyroyal, Mints, Castor, and Brimstone. Some cannot bear sweet scents, let them not look upon terrible things, nor hear great noise of Guns.

Let meat be easie of Concoction; let her eat Quinces,

Chap. 2. Of the Government of Women with Child.

Quinces to strengthen the Child, or sweet Apples with Honey, sweet Apples, Grapes. Let her abstain from sharp meats, very bitter or salt, and things that can provoke terms, as Garlick, Onions, Olives, Mustard, Fennel, Pepper, and all such. In the last months Cinnamon is good. Summer Fruits are nought for her and all Pulse. When the child is bigger, let her diet be more, it is better for Women with Child to eat too much than too little, lest the Child should want nourishment.

Let her drink moderately of clear Wine, not exercise too much, nor dance, nor ride in a Coach that shakes; let her not lift any great weights the first and last months. In the ninth month let her move a little more or dilate the parts, and stir up natural heat.

Let her abstain from Venery in the first months, lest there be a Mole or Superfoetation, lest the child be hurt, but she may use it moderately in the last.

She may bathe in the last months, once in a week to loosen the privy parts. Let her avoid anger, sorrow, fear and too much mirth.

Let her sleep, rather than be too watchful. Let the belly be kept loose in the first month, with Ruens, Raisons, or Manna in Broath. And let her use Medicines to strengthen the womb and the child.

An Electuary, Take Conserve of Borage, Bugloss, and red Roses, each two ounces; of Balm an ounce, Citron-peel; & Shebs Mirabalans candied, each an ounce; Extract of wood-aloes a scruple, Pearl prepared half a dram, red Coral, Ivory, each a dram, precious Stones, each a scruple; candied Nutmegs two drams, with Syrup of Apples and Quinces, make an Electuary.

Roals

**Rouls.** Take Pearls prepared a dram, red Coral prepared and Ivory each half a dram, precious stones each a scruple; yellow Citron-peels; Mace, Cinnamon Cloves, each half a dram; Saffron a scruple, Wood Aloes half a scruple, Ambergreece six drams, with six ounces of Sugar dissolved in Rose-water, make Rouls.

Apply strengtheners to the navel: of Nutmegs, Cloves, Mace, Mastich, Coral made up in bags, or a Toast in Malmfey sprinkled with powder of Mints.

### Chap. 3. Of the Cure of Women with Child in General.

They have divers chronick and acute diseases as Fevers, Plurisie, Quinzies, or Inflammation of the Bowels, of which Hippocrates, (*a woman with child have an acute disease, is deadly.*) There is a double danger. 1. in respect of the Fever which Galen saith will be continued. 2. In respect of the want of nourishment for the child. For if a woman with child be fed, the Fever increaseth. If she have an Apoplexie, Epilepsie, Convulsion, Cramp, she cannot be cured. But acute diseases are not always deadly in women with child.

They have sometimes intermitting Fevers, Coughs, from which they hardly are freed before they are delivered.

*Question 1. whether must women with child use a sparing Diet?*

If you give her a Diet at a long distance, the child will be starved. If you give her a full diet, and

4. Aphor. 31.

Valer. l. 1. obser. hol. com. ad lib. 3. aph. 30.

Gal. cit. lo.

often the Fever will endanger both Mother and Child.

Therefore be moderate, and add something to the diet which the mother loved before the Fever, for the child's sake, and for the Fever. Abate the diet in the first months, let the diet be little, in the middle and last months let it be larger.

*Quest. 2. whether may a woman with child be let bleed?*

Hippocrates saith, *If a woman with child be let bleed she will miscarry, and if the child be older, the danger.* This is to be understood of great bleeding, which was pints in his time, but now we go by ounces.

Therefore if bleeding be required in a Fever, or the like, and the woman with child be in strength, you may boldly let blood upon these conditions. 1. That you take not nourishment from the child, let it be little, and you will take more, do it the second time, lest you weaken. 2. Open not the foot, nor the Basilica, but the Mediana. 3. Before you bleed, strengthen the child by applications to the navel. And if they abort in a Fever, you must impute it rather to the violence of the Fever, than to the bleeding, and you use the necessary help for preserving the mother. But it is safer in the first, than in the last months, because the child needs a further diet.

You may also open a vein in a woman with child that hath no disease, to prevent abortion, when there is much blood, in the fourth or fifth month, especially if they have no Fever, and are strong, as Celsus saith, *A strong child, and a lusty old Man, and a healthy woman with Child, may*

5 Aph. 50.

Amat. Lusi. c. 5. cur. 27. rod. à cast. 3 de morb. mul.

L. 2. c. 10. b2

Book. IV. *Of Practical Physick*. Part. II. Sect. 4.  
*be safely let blood.* And Hippocrates forbids bleeding only lest the child should want nourishment.

Question. 3. *whether may a woman with child be purged?*

You must not give strong Purges, lest their force which moveth the humours, should reach to the womb and cast out the child. Therefore you must not purge women with child in all diseases, nor at all times, but only in the fourth month till the seventh and that sparingly: And if the matter swell and abound, as Hippocrates shews, For the danger from the turgent matter is easily avoided thereby; for it will be purged with more ease, then when it is fixed and quiet. 1. Therefore only purge in an acute disease. 2. From the beginning of the fourth only to the end of the sixth. Use no vehement Medicine, nor very bitter, as Aloes which is an enemy to the Child, and opens the mouth of the Vessels; nor Coloquintida, nor Scammony, nor Turbith, but use Cassia, Manna, Rhubarb, Agarick, and Senna: but Diacydonium purgans is best with a little of the Electuary of the juyce of Roses.

If there be a chronick disease, she may also be purged safely, especially if she be used to it, and strengtheners be applyed to the navel.

Question. 4. *Whether purging or bleeding is most dangerous for a woman with child?*

We shewed in the last Question the necessity of purging and its danger by the great motion of humours, which if it reach to the womb, causeth abortion, because it causeth pain in the belly, and

Chapter. 3. *Of the Cure of Women with Child, &c.*

provokes the terms. But bleeding disturbs the humours less, nor doth hurt any way, but by taking nourishment from the child. And this you need not fear, if there be too much blood. Therefore purging is more dangerous than bleeding.

Question 5. *Whether it is lawful to cause an abortion to preserve the Mother?*

A Christian may not cause an Abortion for any cause, for it is wicked: and the Gentils in Hippocrates his time never allowed it; they would not hinder Conception, much less would they destroy it when made. Nor must the mother be preserved by the loss of the Child; For we must do evil, that good may come thereby.

But if to preserve the mother, the Physicians purge or bleed, and the abortion follow, the fault is not in the Physician that intended it not, but in the weakness of Nature, and of the Child; and it is better to preserve the Mother, than by neglecting the lawful means, let both die. Also the dead child must presently be thrown out.

Question 6. *Whether are Clysters, Diureticks and Sweats proper for a Woman with Child?*

Though women deny Clysters to them, yet if they have been used to them, they may be given in a small quantity, such as only mollifie and supple; nor do they more hurt than Lentives.

Diureticks or things that provoke Urine, are not safe, because they provoke the Terms. You may not give gentle Sweats, for Nature will receive strength by the casting off of her enemies. You must use Alterers that are proper, as this Symplic

Syrup. Take the juce of unripe Grapes about the beginning of September three galons, add Pomegranons or Lemons bruised half a pound: boyl them till they are soft, and strain them, and with half a pound of Sugar make a Syrup.

Chap. 4. Of the Symptoms that befall Women with Child in the first Months.

They are loathing meat, Pica or evil appetite, spewking, vomiting, belly-ach, flux of the belly, tooth, and head-ach, giddines.

These all come from the stoppage of the terms, especially in a Cacochymy or evil juyce: for it goes to the stomach, and so to the head. First, *s. Apho. 45.* They loath meat, which Hippocrates saith, is a sign of Conception. And this is when the Child takes the purest blood, and leaves the impure, which gets into the mouth of the stomach, and infects it, and hence comes the loathing of some sorts of meats.

Sometimes this ceaseth of it self; but if there be danger of a Consumption in the mother, lest the child should be in danger for want of food, give a gentle Vomit or stomach-Pills, with things that strengthen the stomach. As, Take Conserve of red Roses half an ounce, of Bettony an ounce, preserved Quinces three drams, Aromaticum Rosatum half a dram, Pearl prepared half a scruple, with Syrup of green Ginger and Quinces, make an Elestuary.

Anoint the stomach with oyl of Mastick, Mints, Quinces, Wormwood, Mirrles, &c. Give astringents and powerful things with meat, and let it be roasted rather than boyled.

Pica

Chap. 4. Of Symptoms that befall Women with Child.

Pica is when they desire strange and absurd things, as Coals, Ashes, &c. As she that longed for her husbands flesh; and though she loved him very well, she killed him, eat part, and powdered the rest. Of this disease we speak in the third book.

Juyce of young Vine-leaves with Syrup of Quinces, is good against this, or the water that drops in May from the Vines. This keeps the Child from suffering by the mothers Appetite. Or this Spirit. Take Citron-pills, Oranges, and other Citrus-roots as much as you please, and Malmsey: distill them some days, then beat the roots and peels, add more Malmsey, and distill them.

The third is loathing and vomiting, from an ill vapour or humor in the stomach from blood retained. If vomiting give her ease, stop it not, but leave it to nature, it will cease after a month or two. If it be with trouble, give a gentle vomit, or strengthen the stomach, or give a little Rhubarb.

The fourth is pain of the belly, from wind and humors about the womb that go to the guts, distill them as in Chap. 3. Of the Cholick. Avoid moist Fomentations, give Cinnamon-water, or spiced wine. *Hippocr. 5. Aphor. 34.*

The fifth is a loofness, which must be suddenly stopped lest it cause an abortion. First give a gentle cleanser and strengthener, as Rhubarb with Syrup of Roses solutive, then Quinces at the first course at meals; and Rice, Starch, Almonds, Conserve of Roses, Quinces; Apply to the navel a Pulvis of Quinces, Mastick, Nutmegs, Mace, Cloves.

The sixth is the Tooth-ach, from a sharp humor or retention of the terms that goes to the root of some tooth, and hurts the membranes. It ceaseth

O 2

seth commonly of it self, yet if it be great, use Plaister of Mastich and Tacamahacca to the temples, and hold in the mouth the decoction of Fern-roots, Cinquefoyl, Snakeweed, Sage, Mulberrybarks, &c.

The seventh is Head-ach: when the vapors from terms stopt, ascend and twirch the membranes of the brain, it must be repelled and abated with Lenitives, of which in *Lib. 1. Part. 3. Sect. 1. Cap. 3. Of Head-ach.*

The eighth of the Megrim, from the Vapors disturbing the Spirits that go to the head by the veins and arteries, or by the gullet. If it cease not, discuss vapors, and strengthen the brain inwardly and outwardly, as in *Verrigo.*

*Chap. 5. Of the Symptoms in Women with Child in the middle months.*

They are cough, heart-beating, fainting, watching, pains in the loyns and hips, and bleeding.

1. The cough is from a sharp vapor that comes to the jaws and rough artery from the terms, or from a thin part of that blood gotten into the veins of the breast, or falling from the head to the breast. This endangers abortion, and strength fails from watching; therefore purge the humors, that fall from the head to the breast, with Rhubarb, Agarick, and strengthen the head as in a Cough.

2. Palpitation of heart, and fainting, is from vapors that go to it by the arteries, or from blood that

*Chap. 5. Symptoms in Women with Child, &c.*

aboundeth, and cannot get out at the womb, ascends and oppresseth the heart. Use Corals, as in *Syncope*, inwardly and outwardly.

If it be from too much blood, as in *Plethory*, open a vein.

3. Watching is from dry sharp vapors that trouble the animal Spirits. Then use Frictions, wash the feet at bed-time, and give Syrup of poppies, dried Roses, Emulsions of sweet Almonds, and white Poppy-seeds.

4. There is pain in the loyns and hips from the weight of the child, or from the terms stopt, growth of the child, that stretcheth the ligaments of the womb and parts adjacent; if there be *Plethory*, bleed. If it be from weight of the child, hold it up with swathing Bands about the

5. There is flux of blood at the womb, nose, Haemorrhoids, from plenty, or from the weakness of the child that takes it not in, or from evil humors in the blood, that stir up nature to send forth. Also the vessels of the womb may be broken or torn by motion, fall, cough, or trouble of mind. This is dangerous, of which *Hippocrates* saith, The child cannot be well: if it be from blood only, there is less danger, so it flows

the veins of the neck of the womb, for it takes away *Plethory*, or takes not nourishment from the child.

If it be from the weakness of the child that takes it not, abortion often follows, or hard travail, or she goes beyond her time. If it flow to the inward veins of the womb, there is more danger by the openness of the womb. If it come from evil blood, the danger is alike from *Cacochymy*, which is like to fall upon both. If there



be Plethory, open a vein warily, and use astringents. As, Take Pearls prepared a scruple, red Coral two scruples, Mace, Nutmegs, each a dram; Cinnamon half a dram, make a powder, or with Sugar, Rouls: or give this powder in Broth. Take red Coral a dram, Pearl half a dram, pretious Stones, each half a scruple; red Sanders half a dram, Bole a dram, sealed Earth, Tormentil-roots, each two scruples; with Sugar of Roses and Manus Christi with Pearl six drams make a powder.

You may strenthen the child at the navel. If there be a Cacochymy alter the humors, and (if you may) evacuate. You may use Amulets in the hands, and about the neck. In flux of Haemorrhoids, beware of the pain. Let her drink hot Wine with a Roasted Nutmeg.

### Chap. 6. Of the Symptoms that are in the last Months.

1. The Urin is stopt from suppression of the neck of the bladder. Let her then lye down, and let the bladder be fomented with a Bag of Pellitory, Parsly-roots, Mallows, Linseed, and the like, or use the Catheter.
2. The belly is bound from a hot and dry Liver, when the child draws all the moisture to it, or presseth the guts. Let her then use Moistners, as Butter, Mallows, Borage in Broaths; or that Clysters in a small quantity.
3. The veins appear in the hips and legs as various only, then keep them from walking, and let their feet be laid upon a stool.
4. The legs swell from serous blood, but this goes away with the After-birth, and is the sign of a fe

a female child; but if she cannot walk, foment with Lye made of Vine-branches and Wine, or with a Decoction or Organ, Penny-royal, Chamomile, Calamints, Or,

Take Bean and Lupine-flower, each two ounces; Tartar an ounce, Pidgeons-dung half an ounce, with sweet-water and juyce of Coleworts, make a Pultis. Rub and wash the feet with salt water in which Chamomil, Organ and Dill were boyled.

5. The skin of the belly is cleft with stretching after the fourth month; therefore use loosning Liniments, to keep off deformity, as marrow of Veal, and Sheeps-legs, Oyl of sweet Almonds, Hens-grease.

6. The water gathered in time of being with Child, between the membranes that hold the Child, comes forth too soon, because the membranes are broken by leaping, or a contusion. This makes difficult birth, for that water was to moisten the parts. Therefore let her keep a good diet and strenthen the child inwardly and outwardly.

### Chap. 7. Of weakness of the Child.

This is either from weak feed, or little nourishment or bad, causeth many diseases in the child.

To hinder abortion and death of the child, know rightly the weakness, as Hippocrates saith, *They that will abort, have first breasts that fall away, which is from want of nourishment in the common veins of the womb and breasts.* Hippocrates hath a second sign, which is this: *If a woman*

5. Aph. 53.

5. Aph. 52.

Hippocr.  
5. Aph. 56.

with child hath much milk flowing from her breast her child is weak. 3. If the terms flow often, the nourishment is taken from the child. 4. A mother often and long being sick, shews that her child is weak, because her blood is not good, and the bad humors with the blood go to nourish the child, which makes him sick. 5. When the mother hath a flux of the belly, the child is weak. 6. When it begins to move, and is scarce felt, it is weak.

If it be from these causes, take them away, and strengthen the child; first feed the mother high with meats of good juyce, and sweet Almonds steep in Honey, Raisins, Quinces; outwardly thus: Take Malmsey three pints, dissolve it in Oil of Nutmegs by expression half an ounce, add powder of Cloves, Rue, each half an ounce; Rose, Sage, Marjoram, Penny-royal-water, each a pint; Aquavite three ounces: Dip Sponges in it, and apply them under the left breast, to the arm-pits, hams, pulses, soles of the feet; and when they dry, wet them again.

### Chap. 8. Of Crying in the Womb.

Children have sometimes cryed in the womb as Fabricius saith in his Epistle to his Brother James Finceb; and Weinridick of Monsters, writes thus: In this City of Bressa a Child was heard to cry in the Womb three days before the Travell; when he was a man, he was miserable with poverty and diseases, till he died. Andreas Libavius writes the same, and others.

Some say, It portends evil to the Mother, or Child, or Countrey.

It

### Chap. 8. Of Crying in the Womb.

It is a voice by the expulsion of the air through the rough artery, and some air may be in the cavities from vapours or spirits, as in eggs when chickens pip in them. And if the child have a rough Artery, Lungs and Breasts which are the organs of breathing sound, and the child is strong, there is no hinderance, but it may utter a voice. But something, whatsoever it is, must stir it to make this noise.

The Causes.

THE



THE  
FOURTH BOOK,

THE  
THIRD PART.

THE  
SIXTH SECTION.  
Of Symptoms that hap-  
pens in Child-bearing.

Chap. I. *Of Child-bearing in ge-  
neral.*

**W**hen the Child can no longer be contained in so small a place, being grown, and requiring more nourishment, it kicks, and breaks the Membranes and Ligaments that held it, and the womb by an expelling faculty, sends it forth with great straining; and this is called Travel.

It is either natural or not natural, legitimate or

Chap. I. *Of Child-bearing in general.*

or illegitimate. The natural is when the Child comes with the head forward and heels upwards, with his hands and arms to his thighs, and so the other parts easily follow, then the Amnios is broken, and the water that was laid up in the time of being with child flows forth, and moistens the passages, then the child with more force breaks the Acetabula, from which the Secundine is separated, and the other membranes are broken, and the blood flows into the cavity of the womb, and the child gets out by its expulsive faculty with such force, that it seems to fall rather than be expelled, and the bones of the Privities must needs be divided.

That which follows the birth is above humane capacity, namely, The transpiration of the Navel-vessels, and Lungs, and Heart in the Infant, and why nature ordered it, of which *Galen* elegantly in the 15th Book, *Of the use of Parts*, and 6th Chapter.

There is also a legitimate Birth, when it is according to the Law of Nature; and an illegitimate, when it is before or after the time.

*Hippocrates* saith, That a Birth in the seventh month is vital and legitimate. And it is sooner from the strength of the faculty and matter fit for formation, yet it is commonly weak, except the seventh month be compleat.

Of the eighth month *Hippocrates* saith thus: *None lives that is born in the eight month, because it cannot bear the two afflictions to follow*; but the reason of the Arithmeticians is better, that say, an even month is unperfect.

The nine or ten months are the best, as *Hippocrates* saith; *A Child is born in ten months at the furthest*, and so says the wisest *Solomon*. Some

*Lib. de natura pueri.*  
*Lib. Sapi-  
say ent.*

so that a child may be born in the 14th month, and *Peter Apponensis* was so born; and some say, they have been born in the fourteenth and fifteenth month: but rare things are not to be counted the Law of Nature.

Generally Physicians agree with *Hippocrates*, though some dissent.

### Chap. 2. Of Abortion.

IT is the exclusion of a child not perfect nor living, before legitimate time. This time is defined by *Hippocrates*: *Whosoever Conceiveth, doth it within seven days, but they are properly Abortions that come before the seventh day; and though some are in the fifth and sixth month that have lived, yet that must not derogate from the common Law of Nature.*

Some differences of Abortion are from the time and bigness of the child. For that which is cast out is little and round, without distinction of members at first, like a Grape. Sometimes as long as a finger, and members may be distinguished. And sometimes the child is almost perfect.

The immediate Cause, is the expulsive faculty stirred up, and that is done by three means from *Galen*, from the weight, bigness and pain. There are more causes, which we shall place in two Ranks. The first is of the manner of the causes that provoke the expulsive faculty. The other is that which findeth out these ways by all the causes.

The expulsive faculty is first provoked by the child being weak, either from evil seed, or being dead. The child is weak for want of food, and from the mothers diseases, either in her whole body,

*Lib. de cornib.*

*The Causes.*

3. *De natur. fac. cap. 12.*

Chap. 2.

body, or in the womb, or parts adjacent that content, as Feavers, Inflammations, Fainting, Convulsions, Pain, Vomiting, Neezing, Coughs that move the spirits and humors, and shake the child, and stir up the Nature to expel it.

Also straitness of the womb causeth Abortion, by which means it cannot contain a great child. Also shortness of the Navel-Vessels, which *Fabrius* first observed.

The outward causes are cold air after hot and moist, which gets into the womb, and provokes it, and hurts the child. The Astrologers add the malignant aspect of the Stars: also too much or too little meat. Great watchings, purging, and flux of blood by the womb and Hemorrhoids. Also violent motion, as leaping, carrying of burdens, strokes on the belly or back. Also passions, as anger, fear, sorrow.

Also bleeding, purging, fasting, smell of Brimstone or ashes, hoofs burnt, or stink of snuff of a candle.

If the breasts be less, or much milk flow from them, or she feel much and often pain about the belly or loyns, that go to the Pubes and Os Sacrum, with a desire of thrusting forth in the womb. If the child change its place, and if it fall lower when it was in the middle of the belly, there is fear of miscarrying.

It is dangerous always, because it is with violence, there are also great Symptomes: they are in less danger that have already brought forth a child; therefore the first is most dangerous, and the mouths of the Vessels are torn, and they commonly become barren. Abortion is more dangerous in the sixth, seventh and eighth month, because the Infant being greater, causeth greater pain,

*Cent. 2. obs. 50.*

*The Signs.*

*The Prog- nostick.*

Book IV. *Of Practical Physick.* Part. III. S. 6.  
 pain, and breaks the Ligaments worse.

*To preserve from Abortion.*

Consider the constitution before she is with child, and prevent every cause. If it be like to come from Plethory before Conception, open a Vein, and after Conception in the fourth or fifth month in the Arm.

If it be from Cacochymy, purge the whole body, and purge the womb with Pessaries, and strengthen it: of which in the cold and moist distemper of the womb.

If she have conceived, open a vein before the time be used to abort; if there be a Cacochymy, purge gently at times. If there be a cold distemper of body by steam that hurts the womb, give the decoction of China or Sarsa, with strengtheners of the child.

Avoid the external causes of abortion, and if they have done hurt, help it presently. Let not the belly be bound; if the child be weak, remove the causes of weakness, and strengthen it. Use things that strengthen the womb and child, as Coral, Kermes-berries.

Or, Take Magistery of Coral a dram, Pearl prepared half a dram, Ivory shaved a dram, Mastich half a dram, grains of Kermes a dram, Manus Christi with Pearl two drams, make a powder. If the Abortion be at hand, and the pains encrease, give this Powder with a rear Egg. Or, Take Conserve of red Roses, two drams, red Coral, and Mastich, each a scruple, give it presently.

Use the Countesses Oynment outwardly to the Loyns, Reins, Pecten and Perinaum. Or, Take Oyl of Roses, Mirtles, Mastich, Quinces, each two ounces, Oyl of Mints an ounce, Bdellium dissolved

Chap. 3. *Of the Signs of natural Birth, &c.*

in Vinegar, liquid Storax, each two ounces; Oyl Nutmegs by expression a dram, with Wax make an ointment. Of the same with Pitch, Rosin, Colony, you may make Plaisters. Let her hold Load-stone in her hand, or tie it to her navel, or wear an Eagle-stone under her Arm-pits, or Coral, Jaspars, Smaragds, Diamonds. If these will not keep the Child up, you must give over Astringents, and use Lenitives.

Question. *Whether the straitness of the Womb, is the cause of Abortion?*

Hippocrates, 1. de morb. saith, *That the Womb may cause Abortion, if they be windy, thick, great, or little:* And he shews in another place, *That Abortion may be from the straitness of the womb.* And in another place he saith, *If a woman in the third, fourth, or fifth month miscarry, often, and at the same time, it is because the womb will not stretch.* And Galen confirms the same, and it stands to reason, that natural birth is when the womb cannot contain the child for its growth. Therefore if it be preternaturally too little, it is the cause of Abortion. And though Nature hath made the womb to hold the child, yet if it be not made large enough, it cannot contain it; so the stomach is sometimes so strait, that it cannot hold an indifferent quantity of meat, as others can.

Chap. 3. *Of the Signs of Natural Birth, and the manner and government of such as bring forth.*

At her time of her being to be delivered, let her take heed of astringents and thickeners, but

but let her eat meat of easie concoction, and of good juyce, and sit every fourth day in a hot Bath of Mallows, Fœnugreek, Linfeed, Mugwort and Chamomil-flowers; and after let her back, loyns, belly and privities be anointed with the Mucilage of Alhæa-seed, and Oyl of Lillies, and let the child be strenghtned.

But when she hath pains from the navel to the groyns, and in the back, then the ligaments and vessels are broken, by which the child grows to the womb. And because the womb violently strains to discharge it, the membranous fibres are extended, and commonly there are very great pains, and throws, or the child will not be born; and it is an evil sign when throws cease, because the expulsive faculty is weakned. And let not the Midwife provoke throws till the time.

When the Membranes are broken, the water flows out, that comes from the urine and sweat of the child, first little, then more, then waterish blood, and the orifice of the womb begins to open to let out the child. And before the time, you must not provoke throws. Then let the Midwife put her finger into the orifice of the womb, and she shall perceive something round and hard as an Egg. Let her not lie on her back flat, but with her back up, that she may breathe more freely.

After the child is born, you must press the blood in the Navel-vessels, towards the navel of the Infant, and take heed that you lose not much blood in cutting of the Navel-string, for it hath destroyed weak children, and you must labour to fetch out the Secundine with the child: and if it be in the womb, anoint your hands with warm Oyl, and put them into the womb, and fetch it out.

Chap.

Chap. 5. Of Natural hard Travel.

Though Child-bearing since Eves sin is ordained to the painful as a punishment thereof, yet sometimes it is more painful then ordinary.

The first is from the mother, and the expulsive faculty. 2. From the Child. 3. From the passage. From the mother, as when the womb is weak, and the mother is not active to expel, from weakness or diseases, or want of spirits, of which Hippocrates.

The Causes:

It is from the Birth when they are twins or more, and both strive to go forth at a time; or if the child stick to a Mole, or be so weak that it cannot break the membrane; or if it be too big all over, or in the head onely, or if the Navel-vessels are twisted about his neck.

5. Aphor. 55.

It is from the passages, when the membranes are thick, the orifice too strait, and the neck of the womb is not open sufficiently, as in such as labour of the first child, or are very fat. The passages are pressed and straitned by tumors in the adjacent parts, or when the bones are too firm and will not open, then the mother and child are both in danger; or when the passages are not slippery, or when they are broken too soon by reason of the thin membranes, or the water flows forth sooner then it ought.

Fabric. cent. 3. obs. 57.

You may know hard travel by faint throws, that come at a great distance. And you must consider all things concerning the Mother, Womb and Child.

The Signs.

P

In

*The Prog-  
nostick.*

In hard Travel, the mother and child are in danger, and the Peritonæum sometimes breaks with the skin from the Privities to the Arse-hole. If a woman be four days in Travel, the child scarce escapes.

*The Cure:*

All things that move the Terms are good to make easie delivery, As Myrrh, white Amber in white Wine or Lilly-water, two scruples or a dram: some give a drop of Oyl of Amber in Vervain-water, or a scruple of mineral Borax, or half a dram, but begin with gentle things, as a spoonful of Cinnamon-water. Or, Take *Cassia Ligna*, Dittany, each a dram; Cinnamon half a dram, Saffron a scruple; make a Powder, give a dram. Or, Take Borax mineral a dram, Cassia Ligna a scruple, Saffron six grains, give it in Sack. Or, Take Cassia Ligna a dram, Dittany, Amber, each half a dram; Cinnamon, Borax, each a dram and half; Saffron a scruple, give half a dram.

Or give some drops of Oyl of Hazle in convenient Liquor, or two or three drops of Oyl of Cinnamon in Vervain-water; some prepare the Secundine thus: Take the Navel-string and dry it in an Oven. Take two drams of the Powder, Cinnamon a dram, Saffron half a scruple, with juyce of Savin make Troches, give two drams, or wash the Secundine in Wine, and bake it in a pot, then wash it in Endive-water and Wine. Take half a dram of it, long Pepper, Galangal, each half a dram; Plantane and Endive-seed, each a dram and half; Lavender-seed, four scruples, make a Powder.

Or, Take Labdanum two drams, Storax, Calamite, Benzoin, each half a dram; Musk and Amber-grease, each six grains; make a Powder, or Troches for a sume; Or use Pessaries to provoke the Birth. Take Galbanum dissolved in Vinegar an ounce, Myrrh

Myrrh two drams, Saffron a dram, with Oyl of Orris make a Pessary. An Oyntment for the Pecten and Navel. Take Oyl of Keir two ounces, juyce of Savin an ounce, of Leeks and Mercury, each half an ounce; boyl them to the consumption of the juyce, add Galbanum dissolved in Vinegar half an ounce, Myrrh two drams, Storax liquid a dram, round Birthwort, Snowbread, Cinnamon, each half a dram; Saffron a scruple, with Wax make an Oyntment.

Also neefings provoke the Birth, and Amulets, as a Snakes-skin about her middle, the Eagle-stone bound to her thigh.

If weaknes be the cause, refresh her with Wine and sops to the nose, Confect. Alkermes, Diamosc. Diamarg.

If there be Twins, let the Midwife order them with her hands, and help the foremost.

If the passages be not slippery, use an emollient omentation, and Oyl of sweet Almonds, Hens or Ducks-grease, &c. If the belly be bound, give a Clyster or Suppository.

When Medicine will not do it, break the Membranes with the fingers dipt in Oyl, or cut them.

When the Child is still-born, let the Midwife chew Spices, and blow in its mouth, or drop Aqua-vitæ in it, or anoint it with Honey.

### Chap. 6. Of a vitious disorderly Birth, or difficulty preternatural.

If the hand come not forth first, and the hands and feet are upwards, there is an ill birth.

Hippocrates reckons two causes; the largeness of

5. Aphor.  
35.  
Levi. Lemn.  
de oc. nat.  
mir. lib. 4.  
c. 12.

Ætius te-  
tra. 4. c. 23.

The Causes.

*Lib. de nat. pu.*

of the womb, and disorderly motion of the mother from pain, also the thicknes of the membrane, which when it cannot break with the head, it attempts to do with the feet and hands.

*The Signs.*

The Midwife may perceive in what figure the child comes forth.

*The Prognostick.*

All disorderly coming forth is dangerous to mother and child; but there is least danger when both feet come forth, this is called by the Latins *Partus Agrippinus*.

*The Cure.*

Let the Midwife reduce it into the cavity of the womb when it comes not forth right, and place it right.

When the feet cannot be thrust upwards, let the Midwife supple the parts with Oyl, and take hold of the arm, and help it and give needfings.

Let her always labour to put the child in a right posture by moving it with her hand, or taking the mother from the bed, and compose her in such a posture as may bring the child into a right posture, and that soon.

### Chap. 7. Of a *slow Birth*.

*Epistol. lo. 2. 29. epif.*

This is when the Child is longer coming forth than ordinarily: of this *Massa* writes, That a Venetian Matron conceived of a husband of seventy years of age, and brought forth a child in the fifteenth month blind, and without hands which lived five months. *Cardanus* writes, That his father said, he was born in the thirteenth month. And *Mercurialis* writes thus: *That it was never seen or written, that a woman had a live child four years in her belly, &c.* but these are rare and miraculous.

*Consil. 85. ad christ. vuolcken.*

### Chap. 8. Of a *dead child in the Womb*.

The cause is the weakness of the seed, and want of heat in the womb, which makes the expulsive faculty weak.

### Chap. 8. Of a *Child dead in the Womb*.

When at the time of Child-birth, there is pain and breaking forth of water, which saith presently without delivery, the child remaining in the womb, then the mother or child dies, or both.

When the travel is vehement from divers causes, they may also cause no birth, for either the more she may lose her strength and the child not come forth, or both, may die.

And if the Child be weak, and move little, or the mother may be weak and the child great, the travel is hard, and doth die; or if the child come not forth in a right posture.

Or if the passages are ill proportioned, as when the bones of the Pubes do not give way, or when there is Schirrhous, or other tumor that straitneth the passages, there is no delivery.

Or the child dies by a disease for want of nourishment, or a fall, stroak, or leap, or passion in the mother.

Search if the child be living or dead: for if it be dead it will hurt the mother by rotting; and if the mother die and child be alive, take it out before the mother be buried.

A child is known to be dead, if the mother and Midwife perceive no motion, but it is raised by any strengtheners given, and when the mother moves from side to side, it moves like a stone, or



when the face and lips of the mother are pale, and her extream parts livid; and the breasts that were plump, are fallen; her breath stinks, water and stinking matter flows from the womb; there is a Fever, horrore and fainting, or Convulsion; or if the Secundine come forth before the Child.

*The Prog-  
nostick.*

If a dead child be not presently taken out, the mother is in great danger: there are great Symptomes, and strange diseases, of which see *Francis Roussset* and others.

*The Cure.*

When the child comes not forth in time, and is alive, it must be taken out by the Midwife or Chyrurgion, by cutting the belly and womb, of which in the Chapter following. If it be dead, you must drive or take it out before it stinks, either by Medicines or Chyrurgery.

The Medicines are such as stir up the expulsive faculty, but they must be stronger then before, because the motion of the child ceaseth; as Take *Savin*, round *Birthwort*, *Froches of Myrrh*, *Castor*, each a dram; *Cinnamon* half an ounce, *Saffron* a scruple; give a dram with *Savin-water*.

Or, Take *Borax*, *Savin*, *Dittany*, each an ounce; *Myrrh*, *Asarum-roots*, *Cinnamon*, *Saffron*, each half a dram; make a Powder, give a dram.

Purge first, and put her in an emollient Bath, and anoint about the womb with Oyl of Lillies, sweet Almonds, Chamomile, Hens and Goose-grease.

Foment to get out the child with a Decoction of Mercury, Orris, wild Cowcumber, Steechas, Broom-flowers. Then anoint the Privities and Loyns with Oyntment of Sowbread. Or, Take *Coloquintida*, *Agarick*, *Birthwort*, each a dram; make a powder, add *Ammoniacum dissolved in Wine*.

*Ox-gall*, each two drams; with Oyl of Keir make an Oyntment.

Or this Pessary. Take *Birthwort*, *Orris*, black *Hellebore*, *Coloquintida*, *Mirr*, each a dram powdered; add *Ammoniacum dissolved in Wine*, *Ox-gall*, each two drams, Or make a Fume with *Asses-hoof*, *Myrr*, or *Galbanum* or *Castor*, and let it be taken in with a Funnel.

If these will not do, use Chyrurgery. It is done with the hand only, or with instruments, of which *Aegineta* and *Aetius*.

*Charles Stephens* shews how to use the hand without instruments. When you know the child is dead, (saith he) place the woman in the best posture, and tye her so very fast, &c. see the rest. *John Bauhin* takes the same course out of *Schenks Observations*. And because the strength faileth, refresh her, and abate pain, cherish the torn parts, and prevent Symptomes.

To take away pain, and strengthen the parts, foment with the Decoction of *Mugwort*, *Mallows*, *Rosemary*, *Wormwood*, *Mirtles*, *St. Johns-wort*, each part half an ounce; *Sperma Ceti* two drams, *Deers-suet* an ounce, with Wax make an Oyntment. Or, Take Wax four ounces; *Sperma Ceti* an ounce, melt them, dip Flax therein, and lay it all over the belly. In some Countries women will not permit these, but leave all to God.

### Chap. 9. Of the Cesarean-Birth.

THE belly and womb are cut sometimes to take out the child, and this is called the *Cesarean-Birth*, and they that live are called *Cesarean*: It is done in three cases. 1. When the child is dead, and the woman alive. 2. When the

the woman is dead, and the child alive. 3. When both mother and child are alive.

This is seldom, because either Medicines do it, or it is taken out by other Chyrurgery, or the work is left to Nature. *Marthias Cornax* hath a History of one that carried a dead child in her belly four years: it was taken out by cutting the womb and belly, and the mother lived, and conceived with child after: she fainted not at the time, and the wound grew together without stitching; and her terms after came in good order, and she had a lusty Boy till the second of *June*. The Surgeons that had cut her afore, were sent for; and the old orifice was open, and the mother and the women present would not yield to the second cutting. Therefore her strength failed, and the Chyrurgeon took out a compleat child, but it was dead.

There are more Histories of live children cut out of their mothers bellies being dead. And *Roderick à Castro* saith, That an Infant cannot live in the mothers womb being dead, except it be taken out at the very time of her departure, or while there are vital Spirits, because when the motion and life of the mother ceases, the life of the child also ceaseth: yet is his Argument of no force, because the child hath its proper Soul, and if it be well, it may live a while in the womb without benefit from the mother, as it doth when it is delivered. But take heed it be not suffocated in the womb, and keep the mothers mouth open, and let the Midwife never move her hand from the Privities, till the Chyrurgion have taken it out: and you may know that the child is alive, when the mother is dead, by its leaping. *Charles Stephens* shews the way of taking out a dead child.

When

*Enchirid. consul. medic. p. 188.*

*Pin. lib. 7. hist. nat. c. 50. Regl. à Castro, lib. 4. de morbis mul. c. 1. Agen. lib. 5. epit. 2. 11.*

*Lib. 3. de dissect. part. cor. hum. s. 1.*

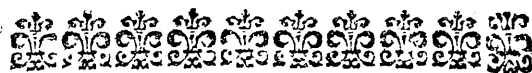
When a live child is cut out of the belly of a live mother, it is done onely left the mother or child, or both should die.

And this may be done, and both preserved alive, which is plainly demonstrated by *Francis Roussel*, in his Book of this subject, so that there is no doubt of it. For first he shews the necessity of the Operation, and next the possibility of it, shewing that the muscles of the belly, the Peritonæum and Womb may be cut without hazard of life.

Thirdly, He confirms by History what he proved by reason, and shews that many wounds of the muscles in the lower belly, Peritonæum and Womb have been cured.

Fourthly, He propounds many more dangerous cases than the Casarean Section, which were not deadly in themselves. And then he shews the manner of the operation, and how it is to be done. Therefore have recourse to his works, if thou wilt learn it.

THE



## The Fourth Book.

### THE SEVENTH SECTION. Of the Government of Women in Child-bed: of the Diseases that come after Travel.

#### Chap. I. *Of the Government of Women in Child-bed.*

**P**resently after she is delivered, labour to make the After-birth follow, of which in the Chapter following; then compose her in Bed, and give her good Food. Let the Air be temperate, rather hot then cold. Let her beware of Cold, that it get not into the Womb, it will cause torment and inflammations.

If

#### Chap. 2. *Of the Secundine or After-birth.*

If Travel be hard, anoint the belly and sides with Oyl of sweet Almonds, Lillies, and warm Wine.

Let her meat be of a good juyce and easie concoction, Hen-broath, and Chickens, and Capons, Kid, Mutton, Veal: let her drink thin Wine if there be no Feaver, or Cinnamon boyled in water, the first daies drink warm: Let there be no noise about her, and let her not rise too soon: avoid passions, lest the humors be stirred, and fall into some part.

If she cannot or will not suckle her child, turn the milk from the breast by repellors under the Arm-pits, as Unguent of Roses, Cerot of Sanders, dissolved in Vinegar, and to the breasts apply a Cataplasim of Bean and Orobus-flower with Oxymel, or foment the breasts with the decoction of Mints, Dill, Smallage; or lay the leaves bruised upon them.

Before she goes forth, let her bathe with a Decoction of Lilly-roots, Elicampane, Mugwort, Agrimony, Borage, Rosemary, Chamomil-flowers, Stœchas, Fanagreek, Linseed, Citron-peels.

#### Chap. 2. *Of the Secundine or After-birth, or a Mole that is left after Child-bearing.*

**T**Hese stick in the bottom of the womb, or like a ball to another part, the mouth of the womb being open or closed.

It is not safe to cut the after-birth from the *The Causes,*  
Navel

Navel till both be come forth, therefore draw it out with breaking of the Navel-string, this is retained, because it grows to the sides of the womb, or is swollen by hard travel, or because the Navel-string is broken by the Infants straining: or from cold air got in, or from a fright, or from her not having throws fit to exclude it, or because she is impatient, and will not continue in a due posture.

*The Signs.*

The Midwife will declare it, and the purgation is not, the belly swells, there is a Fever, and heaviness, and pain in the belly; there is a stink and loathing from stinking vapors, difficult breathing, Suffocation and Convulsion.

*The Prognostick.*

Many die from the retaining of it if it cannot come forth: when matter flows from the womb there is hope that they will rot and come away in sixty daies.

*The Cure.*

First let the Midwife draw it gently with her hand, and use sneezing; then burn Partridge-feathers to the nose, and Goats-hoofs, as in the suffocation of the Womb.

Then use things that expel a dead child, Dittany, Oyl of wood Heracleon after Preparatives, Or, Take *Marjoram, Chervil, Penny-royal, each a handful: Savin half a handful, Anise and Fenel-seed, each half a dram; Lovage and Parsley-roots, each three drams; boyl them in water for three draughts.* Or, Take *Dittany, Troches of Myrrh, Borax, each half a dram; Saffron, Castor, each a scruple; make a Powder.* Or Take *round Birthwort two scruples, Myrrh a scruple, make a Powder, give it in Wine.*

Make Pessaries of Mugwort, Mercury, Sage, Orris in Powder with Oyl of Keir. Or, Take *round*

Chap. 3. *Of the Purgation after Childbearing, &c.*  
and *Birthwort, Savin, Briony, Ox gall and Honey,* and make a Pessary.

The stronger are of the Decoction of wild Cowcumber, Coloquintida, Staphisacre, Hellebore, Honey and gall of an Ox.

Fumes are made of Cassia lignea, Nard, Mugwort, Savin, Penney-royal, Dittany. Or, Take *Myrrh, Castor, Galbanum, each half a dram; Opopanax, Cinnamon, each a dram; with Honey make Troches for to be burnt.*

Then foment the belly with the Decoction of those Plants. Or, Take *Lupin-meal an ounce, powder of Wormwood half an ounce, Myrrh, Rue, each three drams; with Ox-gall and Honey make a Cataplasim.*

If it come not forth, give a Womb-clyster of the Decoction of Sage, Mugwort, Mercury, Calamints, Penny-royal.

If all fail, inject things to suppurate into the Womb, and let it be turned to matter, and come out by degrees, and inject strengtheners into the Womb.

*Of the Mole left after Child-bearing.*

You may know it by the signs of a Mole mentioned, she hath no ease after travel, there is pain in the navel, back and groyns, and much clotted blood comes away, and yet she hath no ease: the Cure is mentioned before in the Mole.

### Chap. 3. *Of the Purgation after Child-bearing diminished or detained.*

THIS is not alike in all women, for in some women the blood is fresh, in others it is waterish

waterish, choleric, or melancholick: And some bleed more then others, according to the constitution and Country. It is either not at all, or too much, or too little.

*The Causes.* When they are stop't or lessened, the vessels are too strait, or the blood flows another way, or it is too thick, or the vessels of the womb are pressed from its position: the blood is drawn away by passions, fears, or goes hastily to the breasts.

*The Signs.* The just quantity is not to be defined: when it is stop't, the belly swells, the pain is in the bottom of the belly and groyns; there is chilness and a Fever after it, fainting, weak, swift, unequal pulse; there is foot in the urin. Sometimes the belly inflamed, or the voids blew or black clods of blood.

*The Prognostick.* It is bad of it self to have any thing left after Child-bearing, and worse if it staies long, and grows melancholick; therefore it is a cause of many diseases.

*The Cure.* First, endeavour to evacuate the blood from the womb by Frictions, Ligatures and Cupping; if they will not do, open a vein in the foot.

Then open the passages with external and internal means: anoint the Belly with loosning Oyls, or foment thus: Take *Lilly-roots, Birthwort, Bryony, Angelica, each half an ounce; Mercury, Mugwort, Penny-royal, Sarsin, Calamints, each a handful; Tansey, Chamomil, and Elder-flowers, each half a handful; Fenugreek and Linseed, each two drams; bruise them grossly, and put them in a bag, and boyl them in Water and Wine: lay it to the Privities and bottom of the belly.*

Give emollient Clysters; And if some dayes are past, purge with Agarick, Rhubarb, Senna. Or, take *Lilly-roots, Althæa, each half an ounce: Birth-*

Chap. 4. *Of too great a flux of Blood, &c.*

*Birthwort two drams, Pellitory, Mercury, Althæa, each a handful; Calamints, Chamomil, Elder-flowers, each two pugils; Fenugreek and Linseed, each two drams; boyl them to ten ounces strained, add Oyl of Dill, Lillies, each an ounce, Miev a simple half an ounce, Oyntment of Sowbread three drams, make a Clyster.*

Or give Pessaries that provoke the Terms. Give things to melt and attenuate the blood. Take opening Roots three drams. *Betony, Maidenhair, Eudrive, Schananth, each two pugils; Asse, Fennel-seed, each a scruple; red Pease a spoonfull: boyl them to a pint and a half, add Cinnansn-water two drams, Syrup of the five Roots three ounces; give four ounces.*

Chap. 4. *Of too great a flux of blood after Child-bearing.*

*The Causes.* That is too much which makes weak. It is blood abounding which hath been gathered nine months in the womb.

*The Signs.* It is thick, or spends the Spirits, and weakens. There is loathing of meat, pain in the Hypochondria, belly-ach, weak and often pulse, dark sight, noise in the ears, fainting and Convulsion.

*The Prognostick.* It is dangerous when long, and with fainting, and Convulsion. Therefore observe the Pulse; lest she die suddenly.

*The Cure.* See what strength she hath, and stop it not suddenly. If it be not very great, order a diet of roasted Hens basted with red Wine, or Pomegranate, of Starch, Almonds, Rice, Quinces, Conservæ of Roses, steeled-Water; and make Revulsions: use gentle things, and strengthen the loose passages.

*A moine*

Anoint the belly with Oyl of Roses, Mirtle and cup under the breasts and sides without scarification. Apply a Cataplasm of Red Roses, Bole and Rose-water to the Liver.

Then use stronger, and give a higher diet in small quantity, and give Syrups to stop blood. As, Take old Conserve of Roses two ounces, of Mentil an ounce, of Quinces without species half ounce, Bole, red Coral, each half a dram; with of Currans and Coral, make an Electuary.

Anoint the belly with the Oyntment of Countess, and other Astringents; or use Astringent Fomentations: or let her take into the womb Fume of Mastich, Frankincense, red Roses,

Then open a vein in the arm, and let bleed by degrees. See Sect. 2. Chap. 6. Of Overflowing of the Terms.

Chap. 5. Of the pains after Travel, and torments in the belly.

These are not in the body, and bottom of the womb, but in the vessels and membranes by which the womb hangs, and that goes to the sides and belly.

The Causes.

They are from a constant labour in travel when the bottom of the womb is prickt to send forth from cold air let into it, or clotted blood detained, or sharp blood sticking to the womb and pricking it.

The Signs.

They are in the womb it self: you may know if they came from cold by what hath been done and clotted blood will manifest it self.

The Prognostick.

They weaken much, and are very troublesome, therefore they must be abated.

The Cure.

First, take away the cause, or abate the pain.

Chap. 2. Of the tearing of the Vulva to the Arse, &c.

and make that which hurts the womb fit to be evacuated by these Pills.

Take Cinnamon a dram, Saffron a scruple, Diacymini, Diagalangal, Zedoary, each half a dram, make a powder, give a dram in Penny-royal or Cinnamon-water.

Or, Take Cummin-seed steep in Spirit of Wine and dried again a dram, Amees-seed, and Ginger, each half a dram; Cinnamon a scruple, Castor half a scruple, make a Powder. If she faint, add Cordial-water. As,

Take Diacyminum a dram, Diamargariton frigid, Ci-peets, Zedoary, each half a dram; make a Powder. If she be choleric, or the humor thin and sharp, cure it as Cholick from Choler.

As, Take Syrup of Violets, Borage, each an ounce, Mucilage of Quince-seeds made with Violet-water half an ounce, water of Borage, Scorzonera, each two ounces: give it at twice

Extenuate the humors; and loosen the passages outwardly. Take Bean-flour, Fœnugreek and Linseed, each an ounce; Chamomil-flowers and Cummin-seeds, each half an ounce; boyl them in Oyl of Lillies for a Cataplasm.

You may fume the womb with Decoctions of Herbs.

Chap. 6. Of the tearing of the Vulva to the Arse, and coming forth of the Womb, Inflammation, Ulcer, Suffocation, and falling out of the Fundament.

The tearing is in hard travel, when the mother is tender, and the child great, of which be-

Par. Secte I. Cap. 1:

Q

The

Part. 1.  
Sect. 2.  
Cap. 15.

The womb comes forth from the violent extraction of the child or after-birth by which the ligaments are stretched. The Cure is mentioned, but you must not hinder the after-flux by astringents, let her therefore rest, and lie on her back, with her feet drawn up, with sweets to her Nose, and stinks to the womb, so the womb will be retained and the flux continued; after this is past, you may use Astringents.

If there be Inflammation from hard Travel, hinder not the after-flux of blood by Coolers.

If it turn to an ulcer, let the after-flux flow, and then cure it.

Suffocation after Child-bearing, is from the stinking after-blood, which sends up stinking vapors which kill many. It is cured by Friction of the leggs, Ligatures and Cupping with Scarification, applying stinks to the nose, as Castor, Partridge-feathers, burnt, Rue. And applying Sweets to the Privities.

You must cure the falling out of the Fundament from straining in Delivery, as formerly shewed.

### Chap. 7. Of Watching, Dotings, and Epilepsie of Women in Child-bed.

These are from the motion of the blood and humors when the after-blood flows not kindly, and there is a Fever, of which in the first Book. And from vapors sent from the womb, there is an Epilepsie, which is cured by Respiration of vapors and humours downwards, and per-

### Chap. 8. Of Vomiting, Loosness, &c.

of evacuation of the After-blood, which done all these Symptoms cease.

### Chap. 8. Of the swelling of the Womb, Belly, and Feet after Child-bearing.

It is commonly from cold gotten into the womb, and the belly sometimes swells, as if there were another child.

It is cured by hysterical or mother-Fomentations, or with the skin of a new slain sheep and hard wine; if in Travel they keep a bad dyet, or drink too much, the humors go into wind; and if they fall into the Legs they swell, then take heed of much drink: and after the flux is past, make Evacuation with things that expel wind. As, Take Coleworts and Chamomil, each as you please: boyl them in Wine, and foment the parts. Or, Take Wormwood, Saushernwood, Bettony, Calamints, Organ, Chamomil-flowers, Aniseeds, Rue, Caraway, as much as will serve for a Fomentation for the Feet.

### Chap. 9. Of the Vomiting, Loosness, Belly-bound, and not holding of Urine in Women in Child-bed.

They cast up a crude and indigested meat sometimes, from weakness of the stomach by consent from the womb, or from the humors that come to the stomach, from the parts near the womb: when the after-flux doth not flow, they

Hip. 1. de nat. mulier.

sometimes vomit blood, or when it is disordered. For the blood not getting out, goes to the greater Veins and Liver, and in its hollow part, by plenty and sharp it opens the Veins, and it gets into the Stomach. Sometimes a vein is broken from hard Travel.

*Hip. I. de morb. mul.*

It is bad of what cause soever it comes: for the strength will fail, and there will be no matter to make milk of, if the food be vomited. If other humors, they may cause a Fever by their motion. If blood be vomited from a Vein of the Liver broken or opened, a Dropic is to be feared, therefore stop it, whatsoever it be in this case. If it be of the meat, give that which will be easily digested, that oppresses not the stomach which must be strengthened.

If bad humors are vomited up, stop it not so soon, but cleanse with gentle Medicines, and open the way by stool.

In vomiting blood make Revulsion to the lower parts by rubbing, cupping them, or bleeding in the arm or ankle, and provoke the After-flux.

The flux of the belly is dangerous if it be great, for it weakeneth, and threatneth to bring a Dysentery, or Tenasmus, or Neesing. Nor is it safe to stop it presently, lest you stop the After-flux with it. If it be from food not well concocted let her keep a better dyet, and let the stomach be strengthened outwardly. If this will not do, give internal remedies, so that they help the stomach, and hurt not the womb, as the Decoction of Barley, Syrup and Honey of Roses. Give Clysters also to temper the sharp humors, and cleanse.

Or give Syrup of Roses, Pulp of Tamarinds, or Rhubarb. And Astringents of Roses, Plantane,

Chap. 10. Of the Wrinkles of the Belly, &c.

ane, Tormentil, Quinces, Coral, and the like. If they be wholly stopt, the belly must not be bound. But first give Rhubarb and Astringents outwardly, and provokers of the Terms.

Also the belly is bound in women in Child-bed, then give a Suppository of Soap or Honey, and after four or five days, give emollient Clysters, and Manna or Cassia.

If they cannot hold their Urin after hard Travel, use a Bath of Bertrony, Sage, Bayes, Rosemary, Penny-royal, Organ, Stoechas, and presently theranoint with this: Take fat Puppy-dogs boyled till from the bones, then take the Fatt, and add Stankincence, Storax, Calamite, Benzoin, Opopanax, each a dram; Oyl of Nutmegs by expression half a dram, with Goose-grease and Wax make an ointment.

Chap. 10. Of the Wrinkles of the Belly after Child-bearing, and mending of the largeness of the Privities.

After the fourth month, Women prevent wrinkles by carrying a clout upon the belly, dipt in Oyl of sweet Almonds, Jesamine, Oyl of Lillies to loosen the Skin, that it may stretch after without clefts.

If the belly be already wrinkled, Take Sheeps-Goats-suet, Oyl of Sweet Almonds, each an ounce; Tetrabi. 4. Serm. 4. 112. *Gamma Ceri two drams, with Wax make an Ointment.* After the flux is past, add Oyl of Mastich, or *or make Aecius his Cataplasim.*



## Chap. II. Of Feavers and acute Diseases in Women in Child-bed.

They have often continual Feavers. The first is the Feaver of Milk about the fourth or third day from the motion of the blood from the womb to the breasts; it is not of many days continuance, and is not dangerous.

But take heed you mistake not a putrid Feaver for a Milk-feaver, for labour and pain sometimes inflame the humors, and cause the putrefaction; and though the Symptoms appear not the next day after delivery, yet there may be the beginning of putrefaction from the heat of the humors in Travel, especially if the after-flux be stopt, from which time you must count the beginning of the diseases. For a Feaver cannot be long concealed, nor the motion from Travel last long: therefore it is probable the motion is ceased, and the Feaver comes of another cause, which I shall declare presently.

### The Causes.

They are the stoppage of the After-flux, or the diminishing of it, or the foul humors that were gathered in the time of being with child, and stopt in Travel. Too great purging of the After-blood or Lochia signifies Cacoehymy, or a Feaver that will come long after Travel. If the Lochia flow not in due time, or be stopt, then the blood and foul humors go back to the great Veins and Liver, and make a putrid Feaver, or inflame those parts.

Hippocr. I. epid. tex. 21.

### The Signs.

A Feaver from milk comes the fourth day, and there is heaviness of back and shoulders, and the Lochia flow well, if not, there is the sign of a Feaver.

## Chap. II. Of Feavers and acute Diseases, &c.

If the humors putrifie in the womb, there is foul stinking matter voided, the belly is swollen, and is pained when toucht. If the Feaver be not from milk, and the Lochia flow, it comes from bad humors, especially if when she was big with child, she kept not a good diet.

A Feaver from milk is without danger, and ceaseth the eighth or tenth day: that which comes from suppression of the Lochia or after-flux, is dangerous and often deadly, except there follow a flux of the belly. If black stinking matter flow from the womb, they escape: If the Feaver come from a Cacoehymy before Delivery, it is worse, because it argues much humors, which Nature cannot discharge by the after-flux, & the strength is dejected by hard travel.

A Feaver from milk, requires only good diet, and sweating must not be hindered, for it cures. That which is from stoppage or diminishing of the Lochia, must be cured by provoking the after-flux, or by another evacuation instead of it; as purging, bleeding in the foot to provoke the flux, or by scartifying the thighs and legs, after cupping, while the time is, that the after-flux should not be afterwards. For if that time be past, if strength permit, open a vein in the arm, and bleed plentifully.

### The Cure.

For purging: some purge them in a Pleurise after the seventh day, but beware by reason of the weakness after travel; and because purges may hinder the after-flux, which is dangerous, it is good to evacuate only by the womb; but if the flux of blood cease, and Nature would purge something from the womb, you may give a gentle Purge of Rhubarb, Cassia, Manna, Syrup of Roses, Senna.

Valer. lib. 5. obs. 10. merc. 4. de morb. mul. c. 11.

Alterers are thus to be ordered. Avoid too cold and sharp things, lest the evacuation by the womb should be disturbed by cold things.

*The Diet.* Let it be thin in the first days of lying in, then thicker, and so increasing: take heed of too much drink, especially of cold drink.

*Question.* What Veins are to be opened in Women that lie in, and have a Pleurisie?

They have Symptomatical Fevers; also from inflammation of the Pleura, Jaws or Liver, because some of the foul humors are sent to some private part, and make an inflammation, to which the Fever is joyned, and the causes are as before mentioned,

If there be a Pleurisie, she is in great danger. The Question is, Whether she must bleed above or below? I say thus: First, this Fever is not properly Symptomatical, but primary, and hath the inflammation its associate, while nature sends part of the matter to the Pleura.

Secondly Note, That Nature is an error while she sends the vitious humors, which she should expel by the womb, to the Pleura.

Thirdly Note, That the vitious motion of Nature is not to be helped therefore, which should be done, if you should presently open a vein in the arm: but the blood is to be voided by the womb, which is Natures way.

Fourthly, If the Pleurisie be not abated by opening a vein in the ankle for revulsion, but the Symptoms continue or increase, you must not continue to open the veins beneath, because they evacuate not from the part affected, which is necessary in such a dangerous disease. It is a sign that

that the matter is fastned to the part, that it cannot again be brought to the womb by revulsion. Therefore then you may open a vein in the arm on the same side, to evacuate and drive the blood from the part or thereabout, or she will be in danger of death.

And fear not, that Nature will be taken from her ordinary motion towards the womb thereby, for the vein that was opened in the foot, prevented that: and if you fear any danger, you may prevent it by Frictions and cupping of the legs, while you let blood in the arm.

And you may give Clysters, that may cause the humors moving upwards, to come down, and loosen the passages of the womb, that blood may flow out the better.

As, Take *Pellitory of the Wall, Mallows, Althea, red Coleworts*, each a handful; *Chamomil-flowers* half a handful, *Fenugreek and Linseed*, each half an ounce; boyl them in Water, to a pint strained, add *lenitive Elestuary* an ounce, *Diacatholicon or Cassia* half an ounce, *Oyl of Violets* two ounces, make a Clyster.

If the Fever abate, and the time of the flux of the Lochia be past, give a gentle Purge.

Cure the rest as an ordinary Pleurisie, only take heed that while the After-flux lasts, you give no binding Medicine.

Also she may have a Quinzy while she lies in, while the vitious matter flows to the Jaws. The Cure of which bleeding is to be done as in the Pleurisie, but the rest is to be done as in the Quinzy.

And if the Liver be inflamed by the motion of the humors to it, you must bleed as in the Pleurisie and Quinzy. Yet it is not so needful

in the Arm as in the Pleurisie, by reason of the greater distance of the Liver from the Arm, for the Pleura and the Breast are nearer, and consent more with the Arms, but the Vein in the Legg is near to the hollow Vein, as the distribution of the upper Veins to the Arms.

The rest of the Cure of the Inflammation of the Liver, is in *Lib. 3.* only observe that you must not use too great Coolers or Binders in women in Child-bed, but things that are of thin parts, lest the flux called *Lochia* or after-blood, should be stopped.

---

THE

---



## The Fourth Book.

THE

THIRD PART.

Of the Diseases of Women's Breasts.

---

THE

FIRST SECTION.

Of Diseases of the Breasts.

---

Chap. I. *Of the encreased number of Breasts, and greatnes extraordinary.*

Though Nature hath ordained two in all Women: yet some have Breasts like Men: others have had two on each side that had Milk. The figure of the Breasts is round pointed

*Card. l. 8. c. 43. de re- run varice Cabrol. at obs. 7.*

at the nipple a little, it ought not to be soft nor hard, but of an indifferent bigness; and it is better they be indifferent, though they hold not so much milk, lest they be subject to Cancers and Inflammations, and when they are too big, they have not a temperate heat.

The Causes of over-great Breasts, is much blood, and the strength of heat attracting and concocting it; these are remote causes, but the immediate cause is the largeness of the passages and looseness, which is in the first conformation, and furthered by idleness, much sleep, and few terms, and often handling of the Breasts, by which the blood and the heat is drawn to the Breasts.

*The Cure.*

It is easier to keep them from growing great, then to abate them when too big; with good dyet and Topicks that repel by cooling, and binding, and drying. As, Take *Mirtle-leaves, Horstail, Plantane, Mint, red Roses, each a handful; Pomegranate-flowers two Pugils; boyl them in red Wine and Vinegar, and with a Sponge apply it to the Breasts, and let it dry: or apply Hemlock bruised with Vinegar.* Or, Take *Powder of Comfrey-roots two drams, Pomegranate-flowers, red Roses, Frankincense, Mastich, each half an ounce; Barley-flour, red Oaker, each an ounce and half; with Rose-water, the white of an Egg, and a little Vinegar, make a Cataplasme.* These may be laid to the Breasts, and under the Arm-pits, to astringe the Vessels, and hinder the blood from flowing to them.

Hemlock, Henbane, and other Narcoticks are forbidden, because they weaken the natural heat, and hinder the breeding of milk.

Dryers and Discussers are good in women that have great Breasts after weaning, to consume the moisture.

Chap. 2. *Of swelling of the Breasts with Milk.*

moisture. As, Take *Bean and Orobus-meal, each two ounces and half; Comfrey-roots in powder half an ounce, Mints three drams, Wormwood, Chamomile-flowers and Roses each two drams: boyl, and add two ounces of Oyl of Mastich, make a Cataplasme.*

The Breasts are too little, when the flux of blood to the Breasts is hindered, diminished, intercepted, revelled, or turned another way, or when the blood is not drawn by the Breasts, as in a dry liver-famine, much Labour, or in Watchings, Fevers, and other diseases that consume the body. The same is when the radical moisture of the breasts is consumed.

You must remove the cause that breeds it, and often friction will attract blood, and foment with warm water, in which Emollients have been boyled with white Wine, and then anoint with Oyl of sweet Almonds, or of Indian-nuts.

Looseness of the Breasts is cured by Astringents.

Chap. 2. *Of swelling of the Breasts with Milk.*

WHEN the milk-carrying veins are too full, the Breasts swell all over, or in part, and are pained by stretching, and red. Sometimes the milk congealeth, and is a hard Tumor.

The cause is abundance of milk or blood that makes it, or the weakness of the child that cannot suck, or because he is weaned.

It often ceaseth without Remedies. Sometimes it is an inflammation, or the milk hardens to a tumor.

YOB

*The Cure.*

You must hinder the breeding of much milk of which hereafter, and consume that which is bred: in women that give suck, the child will draw them, or a Puppy. Or use a Glass to suck with: they which will not give suck, may use this: Take *Barley-meal*, of *Lentils*, *Althæa-roots*, *Chamomil-flowers* and *Mints*, each half an ounce, *Agnus-castus-seeds* two scruples: boyl them in Wine, add a little *Vinegar*, *Oyl of Dill* two ounces, make a *Cataplasm*.

### Chap. 3. Of Inflammation and Erysipelas of the Breasts.

Sometimes the tumor in the breast is inflamed from blood: for though plenty of milk cause an inflammation, blood is the immediate cause, for milk as it corrupts and grows hot, increases pain, and so the blood staying in the small capillary veins, being out of the vessels, is hot, putrid, and inflamed. There are other causes, as strokes, falls, straitness of cloaths, and other hurts of the Breasts.

*The Signs.*

A hard and red swelling shews Inflammation with beating pain, and a Fever.

*The Progress.*

These inflammations are commonly without danger, but because the Breasts are so loose, and have many kernels, and little heat, they turn to Cancers and Scirrhus.

*The Cure.*

If you fear a great flux of blood that will increase the inflammation, let blood in a Plethoric body. But if it come from stopping of the terms or after-flux, first open the vein in the ankle, and scarrifie the leggs, then (if need be) open the arm.

### Chap. 3. Of the Inflammation of the Breasts, &c.

If bad humors coming to the breasts, nourish the Inflammation, give a gentle Purge of Manna, Manna, and the like. If the blood be too hot, or art with hot humours that help the motion of the blood, use Alterers, as Lettice, Endive, Purslane, Plantane, Water-lillies, and the like.

Use Repellers after these, but such as are weak not too cold, as a clout dipt in Water and Honey, with Oyl of Roses applied to the Breasts.

Take Lettice, Purslane, each a handful; red Roses half a handful: boyl them in water, add Vinegar two ounces, make an Epithem.

Or, Take Nightshade, Lettice, each a handful: boyl them, stamp them, and add Barley-meal two ounces, powder of Chamomil-flowers half an ounce, Oxy-mel, Oyl of Roses each a dram; make a Cataplasm.

When the beginning of the Inflammation is first, add Discussers with your Repellers. As, Take Rye Bread crumbs, Barley-flower, each an ounce and half, Bean and Fœnugreek-flower, each half an ounce, powder of red Roses and Chamomil-flowers, each two drams: boyl them, add Rose-vinegar an ounce, Oyl of Roses and Chamomil, each an ounce; make a Cataplasm.

At length use only Discussers. As, Take Bean-flower, and of Lupines, and of Fœnugreek, and Linseed, and powder of Chamomil-flowers, each an ounce; make a Cataplasm.

If the matter grow hard, use Emollients and Attenuaters. As, Take Mallows a handful, boyl them till they are soft, add powder of Linseed, Althæa and Chamomil-flowers, each an ounce: boyl them again, and Oyl of Jasmine an ounce, make a Cataplasm.

If it tend to suppuration, lay a Plaister of Bachelon. Or, Take Mallows and Althæa, each

To be a skilful Physician, study my Senertus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus, and Riolanus, of the last Editions.

each half a handfull: boyl them till they are soft stamp them, and add powder of Althæa-roots two ounces, powder of Līne and Fænugreek seeds each an ounce; Leaven half an ounce, add Oyntment of Althæa two ounces, make a Cataplasme.

When there is matter, and the Imposthume breaks of its own accord, it is well, otherwise open it with a Lancet, or some sharp Medicine, and let out the matter, and then cleanse it thus: Take Turpentine, Honey of Roses, each an ounce; Mirrh scruple. The ulcer will be hard to be cured, except you dry up the milk in the other Breast, by reason of much blood that will flow thither to breed milk.

Question. Whether the Inflammation of the Breast be from blood alone, or from milk also?

The Inflammation and swelling in women in Child-bed upon their Breasts, is from the afflux of too much milk, and it is with redness and pain, and beating or pulsation: and it is not only from blood, for tumors (as in other parts) are seldom pure or unmixed, but there are other humors with it. Therefore it is certain, that when blood is drawn by heat or pain, or comes of it self to the Breasts, and begins to corrupt, the milk also may be corrupted.

#### Of the Erysipelas of the Breasts.

This Erysipelas is from fright or anger, and it turns presently to a Phlegmon, and is cured as the Inflammation of the Breast.

Lay no cold astringent Repellers, or fat things, but things that sweat, as Harts-horn, sealed Earth, Carduus must be given with Elder-water,

#### Of the Oedema of the Breasts.

discuss that thin blood that causeth the inflammation. Apply outwardly hot a Pledget dipt Elder-water.

#### Chap. 4. Of the Oedema of the Breasts.

This flegmatick tumor is in cachectick women that have the white Fever; it is cold and white, and pits, because the part is loose and watry.

Are a loose tumor, almost insensible of pain, and the finger laid on, leaves a pit. It is larger when the terms are at hand, and abateth when they are past.

If it come from a Cachexy, and a disease of the womb, it is dangerous: but it commonly ends in resolution, or dissolved.

The Cure is by dry and hot means; and if it come from a Cachexy or want of Terms, they must be removed: then use Topicks that discuss, and resolve, and strengthen, let them be but temperately hot, lest you discuss the thin, and leave the thick, which will cause a Schirrhus.

Make therefore Fomentations of a Lixivium of Vine and Colewort-ashes, and Sulphur, or a decoction of Hyssop, Sage, Organ, Chamomil-flowers. Then anoint with Oyl of Chamomil, Lilies, Bayes. Or, Take Barley-flour four ounces, of Linseed, Fænugreek, Dill, Chamomil-flowers, each half an ounce; Althæa-roots an ounce, with Oyl of Chamomil and Dill make a Cataplasme.

The Signs.

The Prognostick.

The Cure.

### Chap. 5. Of the Scirrhus of the Breasts.

IT is a hard tumor without pain, from melancholy gathered in the veins that flows to the Breasts; or it is thick flegm dried. Sometimes both humors are mixed together, or more, which makes a bastard Scirrhus. And if burnt humors abound most, it turns to a Cancer: and if melancholy be most, it is not a Scirrhus, but a Cancer.

*The Signs.* There are two signs of a true Scirrhus, hardness; and want of pain, if it be fixed. It is sometimes white, sometimes black or blew, as the humor is. If it be a bastard Scirrhus, there is heat and pain; and if they increase, it turns to a Cancer, and the veins grow blew about, and begin to swell.

*The Prognostick.* The bigger and the harder it is, the more hard it is to be cured. If hairs grow upon a Scirrhus, it is incurable, and it easily turns to a Cancer.

*The Cure.* After Universals, and the Cause is removed from the womb, or the whole body, let the containing cause be softened made thin, and dissolved. But beware of two things. First, That the thin parts be not dissolved by too hot medicines, and the thick left, for so it will be incurable, and as hard as a stone. Secondly, That you ferment not the matter by moistening Emollients, so that it turn to a Cancer.

The ancients either used none, or a drying or a moistening medicine only. You must either use Moisteners and Emollients with Digesters by turns or mixed.

*Mill. l. 50.  
Tit. sec. 1.  
s. 6.*

Foment with the Decoction of Mallows, Althæa

### Chap. 6. Of the Glandles of the Breasts, &c.

Take Fœnugreek and Linseed, Brank-urfine, and Chamomil-flowers. Then anoint with Oyl of sweet Almonds, Chamomil, Hens-grease, Veal-trow, Oyntment of Althæa. Or apply this Castile Soap: Take Althæa, Mallows, Brack-urfine, Fenugreek, each a handfull; boyl them soft, stamp them, add Barley and Bean-flour, Linseed, powder of Althæa, Chamomil-flowers, each an ounce. Or lay on the great Diachylon Plaister: and that of Frogs. Then sprinkle Wine upon a hot stone and let the same be received. And apply a Plaister of Ammoniacum dissolved in Vinegar.

If it be a Bastard Scirrhus, you may fear a Cancer. Then after Universals and Bleeding, take away the disposition of the Bowels that breeds such humors.

If you fear a flux of humors, use Oyl of Roses, and Juyc of Plantane; and if there be heat, stir them first in a Leaden Mortar, till they change their colour, then add Cerus, Licharge, each three ounces, with Wax make an oyntment.

### Chap. 6. Of the Glandles or Kernels in the Breasts being swollen, or of the Crofula and Struma in the Breast.

*Ælsius* saith, The Struma and Crofula in the Breast, are rare.

It is from a thick humor, flegm or melancholy. Struma is with pain sometimes, and it may turn to a Cancer, or seems to turn to a Cancer, but continues many years at a stand. But let the cause be what it will, it comes from stoppage or disorder

R 2

order of the terms, by reason of the great confinement of the Womb with the Breast.

*The Signs.* The Glandles or Kernels are to be felt, though not before, there is one great unmoveable tumor, and the rest are small.

*The Progno-  
stick.* It is hard to be cured for two causes: the exactness of the matter, and the deep lying of them which are near the skin, are easily dissolved.

*The Cure.* After purging and bleeding, use Emollients and Discussers that are strong, as in Schirrhous. Take Orris roots three ounces, boyl them in Oxymel, Stamp them, add Turpentine, Oynment of Althaea each three ounces; Mucilage of Fennugreek seed one ounce.

Or, Take roots of Althaea two ounces, Bryony-root an ounce, Orris roots half an ounce: boyl them soft in white Wine, stamp them, add Ammoniacum dissolved in Vinegar, and Balellium dissolved in Wine each one ounce; with Pitch and Wax make a Plaster. If it cannot be dissolved; suppurate or cut it; but this is troublesome and dangerous.

Chap. 7. Of the Cancer of the Breasts.

6. Aph. 38. Hippocrates saith, That an oscult Cancer is better not cured than cured; for if cured, they presently die, but if not they live long. Many women have lived long with good order of diet, having a Cancer, as if they had no disease, so saith willis.

Cent. 3. Fabricius, and that if the Cancer be not ulcerated, they may live forty years without pain: and if you lay on Emollients and Suppuraters, they die in half a year.

The Breasts are spongy and loose, and therefore Cancers breed often there, but the cause is from the Womb, when they are of a hot and dry constitution with burnt blood, and when the veins stop, and then the humors flie to the Womb and make a Cancer, either with, or without a tumor aforegoing.

A Cancer that ariseth of it self, is hard to be discerned at first: for it is a little tubercle, bigger than a pease, and grows up by degrees, and spreads out roots with veins about it. And when the skin is eaten through, it is a stinking ulcer, and the lips are hard, and the matter black.

It is hard or never cured, because the black humor that causeth it, is very troublesome, and hath peculiar malignity, which is fermented, and made worse with Emollients and Suppuraters, which loosen the vessels, and dilate them, so that the humor flows easier to the part, and the corrupt humors get easier to the parts adjacent, and infect them.

A Cancer not ulcerated, is to be let alone, by the counsel of Hippocrates. But let blood, and purge melancholy often. But use no Topicks that may rot or provoke the part, but things that experience take away pain; as Nightshade, Snails boyled, and Frogs in Oyl, and with the skins of Frogs made into an Oynment, or Medecines of Lead.

Take Oyl of Roses two ounces, juce of Night-berries an ounce and half, Ceruss washed, Sugar of Lead, each a dram; Pompholygos half an ounce; mix them in a Leaden Mortar, till they are dissolved.

Or use Cray-fish-ashes, and the ashes of the inward

*The Causes.*

*The Signs.*

*The Prog-  
no-  
stick.*

*The Cure.*



ward rind of an Ash-tree, or Herb Robert. *Arcæus* teacheth how to cut them out, and then burn the part, if they be deep and ulcerated. *Byronicus* shews, that you must burn after to consume the reliques and stop the blood: after it is cleansed, Take *Herb Robert*, *Verbascum* or *Moulin-root*, *Scabious*, *Caprifolium*, or *Honey-suckles*, *Dill*, *Mandel-blossoms*, each equal parts: burn them, take three ounces of *olive-oil*, and with six ounces of *Nightshade-water* in a *Leaden Mortar*, mix them.

After cutting out the root, purge melancholy humors, often, and provoke Terms or *Hæmorrhoids*, lest it return.

Give *Treacle*, *Mithridate*, with juice of *Borage*, *Sorrel*, *Cray-fish-broath*, and *Asses-milk*.

Ant. Chal-  
meteus.

This Water is good against all Cancers. Take *Moulin-roots*, *Clowns all-heal*, each two ounces; *Drosera*, *wort*, *caterach*, *Herb Robert*, *Agremony*, *Tormentum*, *Scabious*, *Avena*, *flaxweed*, each a handful; *Nettle-seed* three drams, *Elder* and *Rosemary-flowers*, each a pugil; boyl and sweeten them with *Sugar*. Foment the Cancer with one part of it, and wash the dreggs be applied as a pultis.

*Fuchsius* his blessed Powder. Take *white Antimony* that shineth not like glass an ounce, powder it, and pour *Aqua vite* upon it, and pour it off, add fresh *Aqua vite* every third day for fifteen days. The *Thirdly*, Take roots of great *Dragons* gathered in *July* or *August*, sliced and dried in the wind, two ounces; *Thirdly*, Take bright clear *Soot* of the *Chimney* three drams, make a powder. Keep it close stopp'd in a glass, the older the better, use it not till after a year.

For a pallative Cure, keep it from increasing, and take away pain with this Water. Take *Sorrel*, *phalaria-roots* and *Herb Roberts*, each a handful.

*Lambs-tongue*, *Night-shade*, *Bugloss*, *Borage*, *Purslane*, *Eye-bright*, *Bettony*, each half an handful; a *Frog* and two whites of *Eggs*, with *Quince seeds* and *Fœnu-greek*, each an ounce; *Rose* and *Eye-bright-water*, each a pint; distil them in a *Leaden Still*.

Use not Cancers as other Ulcers, for *Emollients*, *Lib. 6.* *Scalers* and *Drawers* exasperate and kill with great Pain.

### Chap. 8. Of Ulcers and Fistulaes of the Breasts.

After *Universals*, dry up the *Milk*, and if the *Breasts* hang down, bind them up, that the humors flow not down, and move not the *Arm* on that side. Then cleanse it with *Decoction* of *Rhapontic*, *Zedoary* and *Agrimony*. Heal thus: Take *strong wine* five quarts, *Rhois obsoniorum*, *Cyprif-nuts*, each four ounces; *green Galls* two ounces; boyl them to the *Consistence* of *Honey*. If you fear a *Fistula*, enlarge the *Orifice*, and take away the *Callus*, and heal it as an ordinary *Ulcer*.

### Chap. 9. Of Straitness of the Passages of the Breasts.

When the *Veins* and *Arteries* are not wide enough to contain *Blood* to be turned, there is no *Milk*.

They are stopp'd by thick humors, as the vessels of the womb are, the cause is the stoppage of the terms, or hard tumors in the *Breasts* that stop or press.

When the nipple hath no hole for the *Child* to suck,

R 4

suck, it is from the birth, or a wound or a scar after an Ulcer.

*The Signs.*

There is little milk, and the Breasts pine. If the Breasts swell, and milk cannot be suckt out, the fault is in the paps, or the veins of milk.

*The Prog-  
nostick.*

An obstruction from gross humors may be cured. If it be from a Schirrhus or Scar after an Ulcer, it is incurable, and so the Nipple born without a hole.

*The Cure.*

If it be from thick humors or blood, attenuate it with proper things, as Fennel, Dill, Parsley, Anniseeds, Pease, Rocket-seed, or Earth-worms made into a Cataplasm, or Fomentation. Often rubbing of the Breasts, opens the Milk-veins.

### Chap. 10. Of *strange things bred in the Breasts.*

**H**Airs, Stones and Worms have been found in the Breasts. A Worm breeds from putrid blood, and is like a hair; the same may be in the back and navel, as I shewed. And a good Author writes That a woman pained in her breasts, could not be eased till Imposthumes broke, and worms came forth.

*Bald. Ron-  
seus miscel.  
epist. 10.  
Lib. de oc-  
cult. na.  
mira. c. 12.*

*Levinus Lemnius* saw Stones that grew in the Breast.

### Chap. 11. Of the *Diseases of Nipples.*

**T**hey are either wanting, or lie hid one or both, which hinders giving suck. If it be from the birth, it is scarce cured, and also when the Nipple is eaten off by an Ulcer. When

When they come forth first, use a sucking Instrument, and then apply Puppy-dogs to suck.

If there be no hole from birth, or ulcer healed, it is incurable: if it be a little often sucking will enlarge it.

The clefts in the Nipples is an usual evil, and causeth great pain in Nurfes; and if it continue long, it turns to foul ulcers, that they cannot give suck.

To prevent this evil, in the two last months of being with child, wear two cups of Wax over the Nipples with a little Rosin.

They are cured thus, with Oyl of Wax, Mir- tles, Oyntment of Lead, Tutty. Or, Take Tutty prepared a scruple, Allum half a dram, Camphire six grains, with Capons-grease and Oyntment of Roses make an Oyntment. Or,

Take Pomatum an ounce and half, Mastich a scruple, powder of Gum-Traganth and red Roses, each half a scruple. Or,

Take Oyntment of Lead, Pomatum, each half an ounce; Frankincense, Bole each half a scruple: mix them.

When the Infant is to suck, wash the Breasts first with white Wine and Rose-water.

That the Child may suck without pain to the woman, let her have a Tin or Silver Nipple, and cover it with the Pap of a new killed Cow, and let the child suck that.

T H E



**The Fourth Book.**  
 THE  
**THIRD PART.**  
 THE  
**SECOND SECTION.**  
**Of the Symptoms of the**  
**Breasts.**

*Chap. I. Of want of Milk, and  
 not giving Suck.*

**T**Here are many Causes as want of Milk, either there is little Blood to breed it, or the milk-making Faculty in the Breast that makes Milk is not right, or the Instruments for blood-making are distemper'd.

Sometimes the matter is consumed by a Fever  
 or

Chap. I.

*Of want of Milk, &c.*

or fasting, when they loath meat, or from care or labour, evacuations, sweats, or loose belly. Or from weakness of the Infant that cannot draw hard. Also sadness, fear and the like, may hinder blood from flowing to the Breasts.

Milk is wanting when the Breasts are flabby, and swell not, and little milk is suck'd out. The signs of the Causes thus: If it be from the Liver, there will be signs of its distemper: if from great evacuation, that is known: the fault is known to be in the breasts, if as oft as they lie in, they have no milk, and the breasts are small and wrinkled; or if Medecines to keep down the breasts have been applied, she will tell you: or if it be from weakness of the child, or passions of mind.

The inconvenience is little to the Nurse, but great to the Child; therefore get another Nurse, or cure her.

To breed milk, give things that breed much and good blood, of easie concoction. Medicines to breed milk, are Fennel-roots, and all green things that heat, and are not very dry, which are few; but infinite are they that hinder milk, as things hot and dry, and cold things.

These increase Milk, Roots of Smallage, Seeds of Parsley, Dill, Basil, Anise, Rocket, Earth-worms wash'd in juyce of Fennel and dried, or burnt in a pot a dram or two, fasting for some mornings, or Crystal or Milk-stone a dram.

Compounds are: Take green Fennel, Parsley, each a handful; Barley two pugils, red pease half an ounce: boyl them, and with Sugar sweeten them, or in Chicken-broath. Or.

Take

Take green Fennel six drams, Barley two pugils, boyl them in Broath and strain them. Or, Take Fennel-seed six drams, Anise a dram and half, Rocket-seed half a dram : give a dram or two in Broath.

Or, Take Cows Udder sliced, dry it in an Oven and powder it, Take half a pound of it, Anise, Fennel-seed, each an ounce ; Cumminseed two ounces, Sugar four ounces, make a Powder.

Hot Fomentations open the Breast, and attract Blood, as the Decoction of Fennel, Smallage, or stamp Mints applied. Or, Take Fennel and Parsley green, each a handfull ; boyl and stamp them, add Barley-meal half an ounce, Gith-seed a dram, Storax, Calamite two drams, Oyl of Lillies two ounces, make a Pultis.

A Dropax and Synapisme, or Plaister of Mustard, are good if often changed.

### Chap. 2. Of two much Milk.

THIS is when much blood flows to the Breasts, and the Mother will not give suck, or weans the Child, for the Infant cannot suck it as fast as it breeds, when there is much blood, and good breasts that cannot make Milk.

If Milk be kept, and cannot be sucked out by the Child, there are swellings, inflammations, pains, curdlings, and corruption. Children that suck much, if they be full bodied, have a Convulsion.

The first coming of Milk is not to be stoppt, but when there is more then the Child can suck, it is abated with a slender diet of little nourishment, as Barley, Pot-herbs-water. By letting blood

The Prognostick.

Arist. 7.

De hist. ani.

c. 12.

The Cure.

### Chap. 3. Of Curdling, &c.

blood or cupping, or by Repellers to the veins under the arms, above the breasts.

Mints, Calamints, Smallage, Agnus-Castus, Coriander, Hemlock : to abate Milk, Mints and Smallage are doubted.

Compounds. Take Smallage, Mints, Mallows, each a handfull ; Fœnugreek, Cummin-seed, each half an ounce ; Chamomil, Melilot-flowers, each a pugil ; boyl them, and foment, add a little Wine, or make a Pultis of them with Bean-flour and Oxymel. Or, Take Cummin-seed, boyl them in Vinegar, and with a Spunge foment.

They which will not give suck, let them foment with this Decoction. Take Mallows, Bays, Fennel, Smallage, Parsley, Mints, each half a handfull, anoint after with Oyl Omphacine. Then Take Turpentine washed with Wine and Rose-water three ounces, Eggs two or three, Saffron a scruple, with Wax make a Plaister, with a hole in the middle, repeat it always before Supper.

If you fear inflammation by too great a flux of Milk, repel with a Cataplasim of Lettice, Water-Lillies, Poppies, Housleek. Or, Take Turpentine washed with Mint-water three ounces, Cummin seed, Orris, Mints, each half an ounce ; Saffron a scruple, with Wax make a Cerot.

### Chap. 3. Of Curdling, and other faults in the Milk.

IF it stay long in the breasts, the thin evaporates ; and the thick remains, and hardens the kernels ; hence are hard tumors, because the cheefie part of the Milk is apt to harden. Sometimes Milk is too thick or too thin, sharp, salt, or the like.

The

*The Signs.*

The tumor from Milk curdled, is known by the plenty of Milk retained that makes clefts, and pain, and little tumors.

*The prog-  
nostick.*

If curdled Milk be strong in the Breasts, it easily turns to an Impossthume and Inflammation.

*The Cure.*

To hinder curdling. Take *Powder of Mints, Coriander-seed each two ounces; Oyl of Dill an ounce; with wax make a Liniment.* Or, Take *Oyl of Mints, Chamomil, Dill, Rue, each an ounce.*

To dissolve curdled Milk Take *Fennel-roots, Eryngus, each an ounce; Mints a handful, green Fennel half a handful, aniseed a dram: boyl them to a pint, add Syrup of the two Roots and Oxymel, each two ounces.*

Foment with the Decoction of Fennel, Dill, Southernwood, Chamomil, Melilot-flowers, Fænugreek, Linseed, Parsleyseed, Smallage, or stamp them, or Mints with Butter, apply it. If it be hard, Take *Mints, Colewort, Bran, each a handful; boyl them in Vinegar, and apply them.*

Or, Take *juyce of Smallage, Dill, Cole warts, each a handful: boyl them soft and bruise them, add powder of Myrrh, Orris, each two drams; Saffron a dram, Oyl of Rue an ounce, Vinegar an ounce and half, make a Pultic.*

#### Chap. 4. Of Milk coming forth at wrong places.

Milk hath been known to come forth with the Urin, or by the Womb, by which passage is the doubt; the short way is from the Breast-veins to the Epigastrick, and so to the Epigastrick to the Hypogastrick, and so to the Womb, rather then from the Pap-veins to the Breast-

Chap. 6. Of the change of colour in the Nipples, &c. 223  
breast-veins, and so the Hypogastrick, and so to the womb.

#### Chap. 5 Of strange things coming forth of the Breasts.

Sometimes matter comes forth of the Nipples *Schenkius* when they have long ulcers, and after the *lib. 2. ex* ulcer is healed, it ceaseth. *observat.*

Sometimes the Terms have come forth of the *Baubini.* Breasts at set Periods, of which *Hippocrates; when Amat. Lu-* Blood comes forth at the Nipples, there is Madnes. *str. cent. 2.* *Amatus Lusitanus* knew two Noble Women that *cur. 21.* were so, and not Mad. And *Hippocrates* doth not speak of the Terms, but of other blood that is hot, and flies to the Head, and causeth Madnes, and part of it goes to the Breast, and causeth pain and inflammation, which shews madnes at hand.

It is cured by opening the Saphena in the Foot *The Cure.* to revel the blood.

#### Chap. 6. Of the change of colour in the Nipples, and pain of the Breasts.

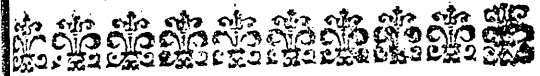
THE change of colour in the Nipples, is not a sign of the loss of Virginity, for they are blew in them that give suck; black in old women; and in them that have known Venery, it is natural, and red as a Strawberry. Now because there is great consent between the Womb and Breasts, if the Womb be distempered, the Nipples are discoloured.

The

The pain in the breasts, is from stretching by much milk, and inflammation; or from corrosion and twitching from sharp matter, as in the Cancer and other Ulcers.

The cause of the pain is known from the distemper. If it be from much milk, it is a gentle pain. If from inflammation, it is stronger. If from a Cancer, it is very great.

How these pains are cured, is shewed in their Chapters.



A  
TRACTATE  
Of the CURE  
OF  
INFANTS.

THE  
FIRST PART.  
Of the Diet and Govern-  
ment of INFANTS.

A

Chap. I. *Of the Choice of the Nurse.*

THE blood that nourisheth the Child in the Womb, is turned into Milk to nourish him after he is born, because he can eat no solid meats. And because from weakness or a disease, the mother sometimes cannot suckle

suckle her child, she must have a Nurse of good habit of body, and red complexion, which is the sign of the best temper; and let her not differ much from the temper of the mother, unless it be for the better: let her be between twenty and thirty, well bred and peaceable, not angry, melancholy, or foolish; not lecherous, nor a drunkard. Let it not be after her first child, and let not her milk be too old or too new, of ten months old at the most. Let her Breasts be well fashioned with good Nipples, that the child may take them with pleasure.

Let her keep a good diet, and abstain from hard wine and copulation, and passions: these chiefly trouble the milk, and bring diseases upon the child. If there be a bad humor from high feeding in the Nurse, let her take a gentle Purgative when she gives not suck, except the child be to be purged by the same.

*Question. Whether is an Infant better nourished by the Mother or by a Nurse?*

Some say by a Nurse: others say, The Mother's milk is more like the nourishment it had in the womb, which is best, except she have a disease. For he that gave her strength to conceive, travel, and bring forth, will give her strength to play the Nurse, though she be weak. And honest women will be very obedient to directions for the good of the child they love so dearly: of which *Abraham*

*Lib. 12 c. 7.*

*varinus.*

### Chap. 2. Of the Conditions of good Milk.

It must be neither too thick, or too thin, for too thick cannot be concocted, and the thin argues crudities. If it be dropt upon the nail, or glass, and falls not easily off as water; if it stick so fast, it is too thick.

Let the colour be white; the more it differs from that, the worse it is. Let it be sweet, not sour, salt, or bitter, or sharp. Let it neither smell burnt or sour, for then it will easily corrupt in the stomach of the child.

### Chap. 3. Of Curing the Faults in Milk.

The usual fault is, when it is too thin by reason of plenty of Serum in the blood: this nourisheth little, and makes lean children that fall into a Diarrhæa or Belly-flux. If it be too thick, they are scabby.

Give hot and dry things, let bread be well baked with Anise and Fennel-seed, roast the meat, and give Rice and sweet Almonds: avoid Fish, Mellets, Summer-fruits, much Broath, use often exercise, and purge Serum or Whey, with Symplic of Roses and Mechoacan, or Rhubarb, if it be hot or choleric.

If ferous humors come from the distemper of the Liver, amend that, and let cold and moist humors be amended with things hot and dry.

*The Cure.*

## Of thick Milk.

It is from gross dyet and drink, or from a hot and dry distemper in the breasts, that turns up the thin blood.

The Cure.

Give flesh of good juyce, and easie concoction. Chickens, Kid, Veal, abstain from gross food; use moistners, and attenuaters, and if there be thick humors with the blood, let them be evacuated.

## Of the sharpness, ill taste, scent and colour of the Milk.

There are divers tastes, scents and colours in milk from variety of dyet. Therefore let a Nurse take heed of fryed Onions, and all sour, salt and spiced meats: and let her eat Sallets and Radishes, and the like. Let her not be passionate. Milk also is sometimes salt, sharp, choleric, and melancholick.

This breeds dangerous diseases, as wringing in the belly, flux, watching, leanness, thrush, and falling-sickness.

The Cure.

Correct the blood, and keep a good dyet; beware of things that corrupt the milk, as sharp, salt things: avoid anger and other passions, and Venery. Good Wine moderately taken by such as have used it, takes away the ill scent from milk.

If these will not do, purge the Cacoehymy of evil juyces, with Medicines proper for the humors offending.

Chap.

## Chap. 4. Of the Dyet and Government of new born Children.

The best colour in a new-born child, is redness all over the body, that changeth by degrees to a Rose colour; they who are white are sickly, and short lived. It must cry clear and loud, which shews the strength of breath. Observe all the parts, and figure, and passages diligently: let the Midwife handle it gently. Roule it up with soft cloaths, and lay it in a cradle, and wash it first with warm wine; give it a little Honey before it sucks, or a little Oyl of sweet Almonds newly drawn, that if there be any filth contracted in the stomach from the womb, it may be cleansed, for there is black matter yellowish in the Guts, which if not voided, will cause an Epilepsie.

Keep it from cold air, and not too hot; nor in too great light: set not a candle behind it at the head, nor let it see the Sun, lest it be squint-ey'd. Let it not be frighted, nor left alone sleeping or waking, lest it receive hurt.

Let it sleep long carried in the arms often, and give it the dug, but fill not too much his stomach with milk. After four months loosen the arms, but not the belly, and breast, and feet, but keep them rouled from cold above a year. Let it be often cleansed from the Excrements of the belly and bladder, lest they cause itching, or pain, or excoriation.

A little crying empties the brain, and enlargeth the lungs, and stirs up natural heat; but let it



it not cry too much, for to prevent Catarrhs and Ruptures; but it doth not least hurt before sucking, and after concoction.

The first months, let it only suck as often as it will, so the stomach be not over-charged. Give it change of breasts, sometimes the right, sometimes the left. Afterwards make a Pap of Barley-bread steeped in water, and boyled in Milk. Let strong Children have it betimes, and not suck an hour after, thus it must be nourisht till it breeds Teeth.

*Chap. 5. Of the Dyet of an Infant from breeding of Teeth till it be Weaned.*

**W**hen the Teeth come forth, by degrees give it more solid food, and deny it not meats, such as are easily chewed. When it is stronger, let it not stand too soon, but be held by the Nurse, or put into a Go-chair, that it may thrust forward it self, and not fall.

In places where bathing of Children is used, let it be washed twice a week, from the seventh month, till it be weaned.

*Chap. 6. Of Weaning of Children.*

**W**ean it not till the Teeth are bred, lest when the eye-teeth come forth, it causeth Feavers, and ach of Gums, and other Symptoms.

The strong children must be sooner weaned than the weak, some in the twelfth, some in the fifteenth month. It is good to wean them at a year

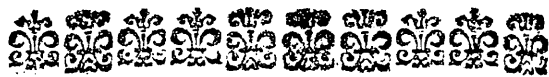
*Chap. 7. Of Childrens Dyet after Weaning.*

year and half, or two years old; but give it not suddenly strong food, but bring it to by degrees while it sucks.

It is best to wean in the Spring or Fall, in the increase of the Moon, and give but very little Wine.

*Chap. 7. Of Childrens Dyet after Weaning.*

**F**or seven years the Dyet must be such as nourisheth and causeth growth, for *Hippocrates* I. Aphor. 13. *They cannot endure to fast, especially if they be witty.* Keep them from passions, sorrow, and fear; and cocker them not, but keep them to reason. Let them play to temper the affection, but so as not to hurt the body.



THE  
SECOND PART.  
OF  
Diseases and Symptomes  
of CHILDREN.

Chap. I. Of Infants, Diseases in  
General.

5. Aphor. 24. **H**IPPOCRATES divides their Diseases according to their Ages; *In new-born Children there are Ulcers in the Mouth, Vomiting, Coughs, Watchings, Fears, Inflammation of the Navel, Moistness of Ears.*

Aphor. 25. *At breeding of Teeth, the Gums itch, and there are Feavers and Convulsions, and a loose Belly when they breed the Eye-teeth. When they are older, the Tonsils are Inflamed, the Vertebra in the Neck are luxated inwardly: the Breath short, they have the Stone or round Worms, or Ascarides, Warts, Satyrism or standing Yards, Strangury, truma's, and other Swellings.*

They have other Diseases at other times, as Meazels, small Pox, the Ligament of the Tongue is too short, chafing.

In

In the Cure use not strong Remedies, nor bleeding, nor purging, but Suppositories and Clysters. As, Take Violet leaves, Mallows, each a handful; flowers of Chamomil and Violets, each a pugil: boyl them to four or five ounces strained, add Syrup of Roses half an ounce, or six drams, Oyl of Violets half an ounce, make a Clyster.

If it need other Physick, give it to the Nurse, *6. Epid.* for the purging force is sent to the milk, as *Hip- c. 6.* *Procrates* saith, *If a Woman take Elaterium or wild Cucumbers, the Child is purged; but you must not give these to the Nurse, but gentle things will purge the Infant, if the Nurse take them.*

Chap. 2. Of Feavers in Children,  
Meazels, and Small Pox.

They are subject to all sorts of Feavers, but they are chiefly a Feaver from milk which putrefies, and turns to cholera, and inflames the humors. And when the teeth break forth, the gums are inflamed, they have watching and itching pain in the mouth, and then Feavers.

When Feavers come from corrupt milk, they *The Signs.* expel no teeth, and there are signs of corrupt milk, belly-ach, many stools yellow and green. A Feaver from breeding of teeth hath its proper signs.

These Feavers cease when the cause is removed; but if corrupt milk last long, it is dangerous. *The Prog- nostick.*

A Feaver from corrupt milk is commonly from cholera; therefore give cold moist things to the Nurse, as Lettice, Endive, Emulsions of the four great cold Seeds, Barley-cream. Give no Wine while *The Cure.*

while the child is in a Fever, Purge the Nurse gently, with Manna, Cassia, Lenitive Electuary and Syrup of Roses.

Give Alterers to the Infant, as Syrup of Violets, Sorrel, Citrons, Succory, Endive-water, and of Violet with Sugar.

Anoint the Back-bone with Mucilage of Quinces, Fleabeen, with Oyl of Violets, and a little Wax: lay Astringents to the Stomach. As, Take Oyl of Roses, Mastich, each half an ounce; red Sanders, Coral, each a scruple; with Wax mix it.

If the Fever come from breeding of it, abate the pain, and give the Alterers, of which Chap. 14. *Of Breeding of Teeth.*

*Of Meazles and Small Pox.*

*Lib. 4 De. fabr. c. 12.* There are Epidemical Fevers at certain times that cast out Meazels and small Pox, of which before. The cause is not only from the impurity of the Terms, but from the malignity of the Air, for they are more or less, as the Air is purer or impurer.

Sometimes it is infectious, and the humors are so corrupt, that worms breed under the scabs, and corrode the bones and internal parts, as hath been seen in Bodies opened, dead of this Disease.

If the Disease be very infectious, before there is a Fever, it is good to preserve by change of Air and Antidotes, when many dye of it; but when few dye, it is not amiss to let them alone, lest they have it in a more dangerous time, for most will have it: only give a gentle Purge, and fortify Nature, that she may expel them.

If there be a Fever, use no more Preservatives, but labour to get them forth by Medicines  
men-

mentioned, and defend the eyes and throat, and prevent deformity, of which before.

Chap. 3. *Of the Milkey Scab, Achores, and Favi.*

THE Milkey Scab is at the first sucking, the Achores are after. The Achores are Scabs not white, and the white scab is not only in the face, but all over the body. The Achores are only in the head, but they are cured alike.

They are all ulcers chiefly in the head, with holes that run with matter constantly.

They come from excrementitious humors, wa-  
*The Causes.* terish and sharp, mixed of thick and thin, very salt. Therefore they are sometimes yellow, or 2. *De com.* white, or red, or black, but always salt, and *po. med.* biting and itching, that makes them scratch. They *sec. lo. c. 8.* are gathered in the womb, and from corruption of the milk.

The vulgar think they are healthful when *The Prog-* they run, because Nature sends them forth, and if *no tick.* they strike in, they cause Diseases and Epilepsies. *Hipp. lib. de* They cure in time themselves, but if the matter *sacro morb.* be very bad, it pierceth the skull.

Dry these not rashly, so they disfigure not the *The Cure.* face, nor hurt the eyes. But drive them forth with Scabious, Carduus-water and Cordials. Use no Coolers, nor Astringents, lest the matter be struck in. Let the Nurse forbear salt and sharp, and spiced things, and strong Wine. Prepare the humors with Borage, Succory, Bugloss, Fumitory, Hops, Polypody and Dock-roots. Then purge with Senna, Polypody, Epithymum, Rhubarb, and strengthen the Bowels. As, Take  
*Conserve*

*A Treatise of the Cure of Infants. Part II.*

Conserve of Borage, Bugloss, Violets, Funitory, Succory each an ounce; Diarrhodon, Diamargariton frigid, Harts-horn, each a scruple; with Syrup of Gilly-flowers make an Electuary. Let the Nurse take every day two drams. Or, Take Harts-horn prepared two drams, Magistery of Coral a dram, Diamargariton frigid half a dram: give half a dram, or a dram of this Powder. Let the Child be purged with Manna or Raisons laxative.

If you fear great putrifaction under the scabs, and that it will turn to a scald Head, or eat the skull; wash the head with Decoction of Mallows, Barley, Celandine, Wormwood, or with Althaea-roots boyled in Boys Urine, and Barley-water. And then anoint with Oyl of Roses, bitter Almonds, and a little Litharge. Or,

Take ashes of Mirtils and Nut-shells, each a dram; Tutty a dram and half, Butter washed with Rose-water an ounce. Or, Take juyce of Beets, Celandine, each an ounce; Hogs-grease two ounces, Sulphur a dram. Or, Take Ceruss, Litharge, each two drams; Pomegranate-flowers and Agarick, each a dram; with Oyl of Roses and Vinegar, make an Oyntment: or wash with Soap, and then with the Decoction. When the skull is baer, use Honey of Roses and Spirit of Wine, and after round Birthwort, and Balsom of Peru, and Turpentine with Tobacco-water.

*Chap. 4. Of a Scald Head.*

**I**F Achores or Favi last long, or are ill cured, they turn to a Scald, which is a scabby Ulcer that corrodes the skin and stinks; it is called *Tinea* or Moth which eats Garments as this doth  
the

*Of a Scald Head.*

the flesh. Achores are moist ulcers in the head and body. *Tinea* is a moist ulcer in the head only.

The immediate cause is a salt and sharp humor melancholick from the mothers blood, or bad milk: it infecteth others, by the colours or caps. *The Causes.*

Some are like a bran or scurf, with scales; some are slimy, and when the scab is off, there appears red quick knobs of flesh, like the insides of figs: some are malignant, some not, some new, some old. *The Differences.*

There are dry scabs in the head, yellow or ash-coloured, that run little, and that which is voided stinketh. *The Signs.*

It is hard to be cured. If it be new, or the matter yellow, or the like, it is easier. An old Scald ash-coloured and black is stubborn: after cure, the hair will scarce grow there again, because the skin is so hard; if it will not grow red after rubbing, there is no hopes of hair coming again. *The Prognostick.*

First, Take off the Scab with cleansers a little sharp, and because the humors make the skin dry and thick, moisten with Hogs-grease upon Beet or Colewort-leaves. Or, Take juyce of Funitory, Coleworts, Docks, Elicampane, each an ounce and half; Litharge half an ounce, with Hogs-grease, Oyl of Rue, and Wax, make a soft Oyntment. *The Cures.*

When the Child is of age and strong, make first universal evacuation with Senna, Rhubarb, Agarick; then take off the Scab with Sulphur two drams, Mustard half a dram, Stavifacre, Bryony-roots, each a dram; Vinegar an ounce, Turpentine half an ounce, and Bears-grease. Or  
beas

heat Water-creffes with Hogs-grease and apply it, the scab will fall off in twenty four hours, continue it.

After the scab is off, pull the hair out by the roots, with instruments or medicines; commonly they use a pitched cap, and pull it off violently, which brings away the hair. Or, Take *Starch* or *wheat-flour* two ounces, *Rosin* half an ounce, boyl it in water for a *Pultis*, lay it upon the several *Scalds*, and let it stick some days, then pluck it off suddenly. Then use *Emollients* that correct the dry distemper.

Also use things to take the excrements out that lye deep in the skin. As, Take roots of *Althea*, *Docks*, *Lillies*, each an ounce, *Mallows*, *Fumitory*, *Sage*, each two handfuls; boyl them in *Lye*, add *Vinegar*, wash the head with it every day. Then,

Take *Obstratium*, *Sulphur*, each half an ounce; *Oyl* of *Eggs* an ounce, with *Hogs-grease*. After that Take *Bryony* and *Dock-roots*, and *Elicampane-roots* each an ounce; *Fumitory*, *Celandine*, *Scabious*, each two handfuls; *Chamomil* and *Balm*, each a handful; boyl them in *Lye*, and wash the head twice a day therewith, or foment it, then rub the head with a course cloth, or with *Oyl* of *Staves-acre*, or of *Radish* till it grow red, to draw out the bad humors that lye deep.

Then use *Tarr* and *Wax* for a *Ceret*. Or, Take *Salt-Peter* an ounce, *Oxymel* an ounce and half. Or, Take quick *Brimstone* an ounce, white *Hellebore*, *Staves-acre*, each two drams, with *Hogs-grease*.

It is not safe to use *Arsenick*, or *Orpiment*, or *Mercury*, or other poisons that corrode, because it is so near the brain.

Chap.

Chap. 5. Of *Ptiriasis* or breeding of Lice.

Lice are Creatures which breed in cloaths that are constantly worn, but they are chiefly in children from the excrements of the head.

All say, That filth and nastiness alone is the cause of Lice; but I think not, for filth alone cannot do it without heat, for besides the first qualities, there is a hidden force in the matter by which it is disposed to produce a particular species; for Fleas and Worms will not breed of that matter which breeds Lice: so it is in Plants.

Heat is the helping cause which raiseth the seminal force, and brings it into act; and though the matter be putrid, it doth not work upon it, but as it is somewhat natural.

Excrements are not presently putrid, but there is in them a heat that can raise forming force, and though there is some putrefaction, yet it is not so great as to hinder the action: hence it is, that children and women that are hot and moist, have many excrements that are fit to breed Lice.

Some meats breed Lice, as Figs by their fat juyce which doth naturally tend to the skin, and varieties of meats, and not cleansing nor combing. The place where Lice breed in children is the skin of the head, where they stick fast with the hair, especially if there be scabs.

The signs are needless, they are manifest.

It is a filthy troublesome disease, many have them breed all over the Body, and some have died by them. Sometimes the Lice leave them when they are about to die.

Gal. oriba  
Ausc.The Signs:  
The Prog-  
nostick.

To

To prevent breeding Lice, let children eat no food of evil juyce, especially Figs: let the head be often combed and washed, and the matter purged that breeds them, with hot dry thin medicines, that draw the matter out, and consume superfluous moisture.

*The Cure.*

Take heed of Mercury and Arsnick in children, but make this Lotion. Take round Birthwort, Lupines, Pine and Cypress-leaves, each equal parts; boyl them. Or, Take Elicampne-roots two ounces, Briony half an ounce, Beets, Mercury, Soapwort, each a handful; Lupines a dram, Niter half an ounce, boyl them for a Lotion; then use this Oynment. Take Powder of Stavifacre three drams, of Lupines half an ounce, Agarick two drams, quick Sulphur a dram and half, Ox-gall half an ounce, with Oyl of Wormwood: there are stronger, as white Hellebore and Mercury, which are not safe.

### Chap. 6. Hydrocephalus, or Swelling of the Head.

WE spake of this in the water without the Skull: Hydrocephalus is from water gathered within the Skull, or in the Ventricles of the Brain; as when the Childs head in the Womb hangs down, or when the Brain is very moist.

*The Signs.* A tumor from water contained in the brain, is less and harder then when it is out of the skull.

*The Prognostick.* It is harder to be cured then when it is gathered without the skull, and is often deadly.

*The Cure.* There are many medicines mentioned that are good here to be used outwardly, and to the nose

### Chap. 7.

#### Of Syriasis.

nose and ears. As Take Snails in their shells thirty, Marjorum, Mugwort, each a handful, stamp, add Camphire a scruple, Saffron half a dram, with Oyl of Chamomil make a Pultis. Snuff this water often: Take Nutmegs, Cloves, Cubebs, each a scruple; Calamus, Frankincense-bark, each half a dram; Marjoram-water three ounces, drop hot Oyls into the Ears. If in twenty dayes the water be not gone, open the Skull, and let out the water by degrees, and take heed of cold.

The tumor of wind in the skin of the head or membranes of the brain, is seldom without water which breeds wind.

Use Discuffers that make thin, as Chamomil, Rue, Organ, &c.

### Chap. 7. Of Syriasis.

It is from *Ætius*, a disease with a Fever, or an *Terra* i. inflammation of the membranes and the brain, *serm.* 4. so that there is a hollownes of the eyes and forehead. c. 13.

It is from flegmatick blood that grows hot by putrefaction, and so becomes like cholera. The remote causes are hot weather, and milk full of wind, from the evil dyet of the Nurse. Such milk will make the child drunk, and cause the inflammation.

Heat of the fore-head, and hollownes there, *The Signs.* Redness of face, a Fever, driness, no appetite, watching. The hollownes in the fore-part of the head, is where the Sagital and Coronal sutures meet, for there the bones are membranous, and grow at last hard.

It is dangerous, and counted deadly among women; and as often as this bone or membrane falls, *The Prognostick.*

T

*A Treatise of the Cure of Infants. Part II.*

falls, there is a pit, and the brain falls down, they commonly die in three days.

*The Cure.*

First, give a Clyster of Syrup of Roses or Violets, then Coolers, of the juyce and water of Lettice, Guords, Melons; or apply a Pumpion split in two. But cool not the brain too much, anoint with Oyl of Roses. Or, Take Oyl of Roses half an ounce, Populeon an ounce, the white of an Egg, and of the Emulsion of cold Seeds drawn with Rose-water two drams.

After the flux is stopt, and the inflammation abated, use Discussers. As, Take Oyl of Chamomil an ounce and half, of Dill half an ounce, with the yolk of an Egg.

Let the Nurfes diet be cooling, or the milk be changed: let it not be vexed.

*Chap. 8. Of Frigh's in the Sleep.*

*3. Aphor.  
24.*

**H**ippocrates saith this is often; the cause is unclean vapors mixed with the animal spirits that disturb them, and present horrible objects to the fancy. They arise from the depraved concoction of the stomach, in full feeding children, that eat more than they can digest. These vapors ascend not onely by the weasand, but by the veins to the head. It comes often from worms also, or corrupt humors that gnaw the mouth of the stomach.

*The Signs.*

They grown in their sleep, and twitch, and being frighted out of sleep, they cry, their breath is hot and oft n stinking.

*The Prog-  
nostick.*

Cure it presently, for it is the fore-runner of an Epileptic.

Give

*Chap. 9.*

*Of great Watching.*

Give good Milk and les, that the stomach be not over-charged. Let it not sleep presently after food, but carry it about, till it is in the bottom of the stomach. Use Oyl of sweet Almonds, or Honey of Roses two spoonfuls to cleanse the stomach. Then strengthen it with Magistery of Coral, or Confection of Hyacinths with Milk. Or, Take Magistery of Coral a dram, Diaplerers a scruple, with Sugar dissolved in Rose-water an ounce make Rouls.

Anoint the stomach with Oyl of Nard, Wormwood, Mints, Mastich, Nutmegs. If it be from a Fever, look to that; If from Worms, I shall after speak of it. Some hang Coral and Wolves-teeth about the Childs neck.

*Chap. 9. Of great Watching.*

**A** Child new born sleeps more than he wakes, because his brain is very moist, and he used to sleep in the Womb. If you cannot make him sleep by singing or rocking, nor the like, it is a Disease.

Are divers in men and children: in these it is from milk corrupt in the stomach, from which sharp humors arise, and disturb the Animal Spirits, and infect them; and if there be sad fancies, frighs follow, of which before.

If it cries alwayes, and cannot by any art be made to sleep, it is a sign of a disease of watching which is dangerous, because children use to sleep much. And hence come Catarrhs, Convulsions, Drines, and Feavers.

The bad milk must be amended, and the corrupt meat prevented. If it be from a Fever or Pain, remove them. Galen adviseth you often to

T 2

change c. 8.

*A Treatise of the Cure of Infants.* Part. II.

change the bed and place. Sleeping Medicines are not safe, but hurt; but are rather to be given the Nurse moderately, as sweet Almonds, Lettice, Poppy-seeds.

Wash the Feet with Decoction of Dill-tops, Chamomil-flowers, Sage, Ofiers, Vine-leaves, Poppy heads. Cool not the head too much, nor use Narcoticks. These are safe: Oyl of Dill to the Temples, Oyl of Roses, with Oyl of Nutmegs, with Poppy-seed, Breast-milk, Rose or Nightshade-water with Saffron.

In great driness of the Brain, let the covering of the Cradles head be wet.

Chap. 10. *Of Epilepsie and Convulsion.*

IT is either by consent from parts below, when the milk corrupts in the stomach, or from an ill quality in it from the Nurses bad diet, or from worms in the guts, or from vapors, from bad humors that twitch the membranes of the brain, as in the Meazels and small Pox.

It is sometimes from the brain first, as when the humors are bred in the brain that cause it, either from the parents, or from distemper, or bad dyer.

It may come from Tooth-ach also, when the brain consents, and from a sudden fright.

*The Signs.*

It is manifest. You shall know by the signs of the disease, whether it comes from bad milk, worms or teeth. If from a fright, the people will tell you. If these all are absent, it is certain that the brain is first affected.

*The Prognostick.*

It is a great disease, and kills for the most part young

Chap. 10. *Of Epilepsie and Convulsion.*

young children. But when in older, and it comes at a distance, it vanisheth by age. If it come with Pox or Meazles, it ceaseth when they come forth, if Nature be strong enough. Hippo. 58. Aph. 7.

Give this Powder to prevent it, to a child as-soon as it is born. Take Male Piony-roots gathered in the decrease of the Moon, a scruple, Magistery of Coal half a scruple, with Leaf-gold make a powder. Or, Take Piony-roots a dram, Piony-seeds, Mistletoe of the Oak, Elkes-hoof, Mans-skull, Amber, each a scruple, Musk two grains; make a Powder. *The Cure.*

The Florentins burn behind in the head to dry the Brain; and Celsus saith, It is the Remedy. Agineta saith, That children cannot endure such cruelty, for the pain and watching would kill them. See *Sylvaticus*. Lib. 3. c. 25. L. 3. c. 13.

The best part of the Cure is the Nurses diet, which must not be disordered. If it be from corrupt milk, provoke vomit, thus hold down the tongue: and put a quill dipt in sweet Almonds down the throat. *Sylvatic. contra. 87.*

If it come from Worms, give things that kill Worms, with Piony-roots, and the like. If there be a Fever, respect that also. Give Coral, Smaragd, and Elkes-hoof.

In the fit give Epileptick water, as Lavender-water, and rub with the Oyl of Amber; or hang a Piony-root, Elkes-hoof, or Smaragd about the neck.

*Of a Convulsion.*

This is when the brain labors to cast out what troubles it. The matter is in the marrow of the back, and fountain of the nerves. It is a stubborn disease, and often kills.

In the Fit, wash the body, especially the backbone



bone with decoction of Althæa, Lilly-roots, Piony, Chamomil-flowers. And anoint with Mans and Goose-grease, Oyl of Worms, Orris, Lillies, Foxes, Turpentine, Mastich, Storax, Calamint.

*Ex Paulo  
Ægineta.*

The Sun flower is good boyled in water, for to wash the Child.

### Chap. II. Of Strabismus, or Squint eyes.

THIS is when they lie in the Cradle with their head from the light, or on one side, and they still look towards the light, which causeth distortion of the eyes, or it may come from the Epilepsie, or by Birth.

*the Prog-  
nostick.*

If by birth it is not curable, nor if it come from an Epilepsie. If it come from custome, and be new, it is curable.

*The Cure.  
Lib. 1. par.  
3. c. 43.*

You must put a candle on the contrary side, or a Picture, so long till the eyes come to be right.

### Chap. 12. Of Pain in the Ears, Inflammation, Moisture, Ulcers, and Worms.

OF these in the first Book. But here we shall speak of Infants: The Brain in them is very moist, and hath many excrements which Nature cannot send out at its proper passages; these get often to the ears, and cause pain, and flux of blood, with inflammation and matter with pain.

*The Signs.*

In children pain and inflammation are hard to be known, they cannot relate it, only it is known by

### Chap. 13. Of the Thrush, Bladders in the Gums, &c.

by constant crying and feeling their ears, and will not let others touch them; sometimes the parts about the Ears are red.

It is dangerous, because it brings watching, and Epilepsie: the moisture breeds worms there, and fouls the spongy bones, and at length deafness incurable.

*The Prog-  
nostick.  
Hipp. 1.  
prog. c. 16.  
The Cure.*

Presently allay the pain, but children must not have strong remedies. Onely use warm milk about the ears, Oyl of Violets, or the Decoction of Poppy tops, To take away moisture, use Honey of Roses, and Aqua Mellis, to be dropt into the Ears. Or, Take *Virgins Honey half an ounce, red Wine two ounces, Allum, Saffron, Salt-peter, each a dram; mix them at the fire.* Or drop in Hemp-seed-Oyl with a little Wine.

### Chap. 13. Of the Thrush, Bladders in the Gums, and inflammation of the Tonsils.

THESE are from bad milk, or from foul humors, in the stomach, for the mouth is tender, and cannot endure the sharp milk, nor the vapors from the stomach, because the coat is the same as in *Lib. 2. Par. 1. Cap. 18.*

The bladders in the gums are thus cured. Take *Lintils husked, powder them, lay it upon the gums.* Or, Take *Melium in flour half an ounce, with Oyl of Roses make a Liniment.*

The inflammation of the Tonsils is more from eleven to thirteen, for then the parts are harder, and hold the humors longer, and they cannot sweat out.

For Cure, keep the belly loose by Clysters, or

T 4

*Hip. 2.  
Aphor. 26.*

the like; use Repellers at first, then Resolvers with Repellers, and at last Resolvers alone, but not too hot; in age, Gargles are best: in Infants anoint with Honey of Roses, Mirtles, Pomegranates, Diamoron inwardly, outwardly use Oyl of sweet Almonds, Chamomil, St. Johns-wort, &c.

*Lib. 2. Par. 1. cap. 22.*

### Chap. 14. *Of Breeding of teeth.*

**T**HIS is a necessary evil in all children, and very great, by reason of the variety of symptoms joyned with it. It is about the seventh month, first the fore-teeth, then the eye-teeth, and last of all the grinders. First they feel an itching in their gums, then they are pierced as with a needle, and pricked by the sharp bones, whence is great pain, watching and inflammation of gums, Fever, looseness and convulsions, especially when they breed their eye-teeth.

*The Signs.* First, it is known by the usual time, as the beginning of the seventh month. Also they put their fingers in their mouths to allay pain. 3. They hold the nipple faster than before. 4. The gum is white where the tooth begins to come, and there are divers Symptoms mentioned before. The Fever that follows breeding of teeth, comes from choleric humors inflamed by watching, pain and heat.

*The Prog. of sick.* The longer teeth are breeding, the greater the danger, so that many die of Fevers or Convulsions. They are best that have their belly loose: These have no Convulsion, and a Fever consumes the humors.

Hard

Hard breeding of teeth is from thicknes of the gums; therefore mollifie and loosen them, rub them with your finger dipt in Butter and Honey, or a Virgin Wax candle is to be chewed upon. Or anoint with Mucilage of Quinces made with Mallow-water, or with the brains of a Hare. Foment the cheek with the decoction of Althæa and Chamomil-flowers, and Dill, or with juyce of Mallows, and fresh Butter.

If the gums are inflamed, add juyce of Nightshade and Lettice. Let the Nurse keep a temperate dyet inclining to cold, as Barley-broaths, or Water-grewel, rear Eggs, Prunes, Lettice, Endive. Avoid salt, sharp, biting and peppered meats, and Wine.

### Chap. 15. *Of Loosing of the Tongue, and of the Frog.*

**W**HEN the tongue is tyed, they cannot freely suck. This must be done by skilfull Artists; or use this Liniment. Take clarified Honey, and boyl it up gently till it may be powdered. Then take yolks of hard Eggs dried in a glass in an Oven, till they may be powdered, a dram, Frankincense and Mastich, each a scruple; burnt Allum six grains, with Honey of Roses make a Liniment.

The Frog is when the veins under the tongue are filled with bad blood; and if flegm sweat out, and stick in the passages, there is a tumor like Mushrooms which causeth stammering. It is cured thus: Take Cuttle-bone, Sal-gem, Pepper, each a dram; burnt Spunge three drams, make a Powder, or with Honey a Liniment: rub under the tongue.

Lay

Lay under the chin a Plaister of Goose-dung and Honey boyled in Wine, till the Wine be consumed.

### Chap. 16. Of Catarrh, Cough, and difficult Breathing.

*Lib. 1. Par. 2. c. 34.* **WE** have spoken of these before, but because Hippocrates reckons them in childrens diseases, I shall touch upon them.

*The Causes.* The general Cause of a Catarrh in a child, is a moist brain, and much milk that burdens the stomach, from whence many vapors fill the brain; and if the brain be full of excrements, it is easily dissolved or melted, either by heat or cold, and goes to the nose, jaws or lungs, which cause a Cough or Asthma. Moreover, much food makes crudities in the first passages, and flegmatick blood is bred of crudity and thick chyle in the Liver. This is sent by the arterial vein into the lungs, and pressing the Bronchia or Pipes of the ungs, causeth difficult breathing and Asthma.

*The Signs.* It is known to be from a hot humor if it be thin, they often sneeze, the face is red, and the jaws; the breath is short, and the Nurse finds it in her nipples. If difficulty of breathing come from the head, there will be cough and snorting in breathing, and a noise in the Lungs, when the air passeth not freely through them. If it come from the parts below, there is neither Catarrh nor Cough, but hardness about the Liver, and a tumor.

*The Prognostick.* In Children a great Catarrh with short breath is hard to be cured, because they cannot take Physick.

First,

First, let it and the Nurse keep a good diet, fill not the stomach with milk nor other diet; but let the Nose forbear sharp, salt, peppered, sour things, and things that fill the head with vapors. And give her a Pectoral Decoction: Take Figs, Jujubes, each ten; Sebestens thirty, Raisens stoned ten drams, Liquorish two drams. Maiden-hair Hyssop, Violets, each half an ounce: boyl them in thrce pints of Water, to the consumption of the third part. Let her take six ounces every morning.

Keep the belly open with Syrup of Roses, or Cassia, or a Clyster: with Oyl of sweet Almonds, with Sugar-candy, or juyce of Fennel, with Milk, or hold down the Tongue, and provoke Vomiting.

Give Syrup of Jujubes, Maiden-hair. If the Matter be thick, give Syrup of Hyssop, or Horehound, or an Emulsion of Oyl of sweet Almonds, Pine-nuts, Scabious-water. Or give a Lohoch of Diareoes, Diatragacanth frigid, Penides, with Syrup of Jujubes.

If it be hot, give Emulsions of the four great cold Seeds, with Mallows, Pellitory, with Diatragacanth frigid.

To dry up the matter, lay outwardly a stupe of Hemp hot, and sprinkled with powder of red-Roses and Frankincense. Apply Basil and Marjoram to the Nose, to make it sneeze.

### Chap. 17. Of the Hickets.

**IT** comes from corruption of the food in the stomach, or from milk filling it, or from cold air: these hurt the expulsive faculty, and it is stirred up to expel what is hurtful.

If it come from repletion of milk, the belly swells *The Signs.*

swells, and there is vomiting after. If from corruption of milk, the Nurse hath bad milk: the child cries, and is pained, and the excrements smell of stinking milk.

*The Prog-  
nostick.*

Hickets is commonly, not dangerous in children, and cease when the cause is taken away. If it be from a vehement cause, and goes to the nerves, there follows a Convulsion, or Epileptic, and death.

That from corruption of nourishment is cured by Vomit, with a feather dipt in Oyl, to tickle the throat; then strengthen the stomach with hot things. As Syrup of Mints, Bettony, and foment it with decoction of Mints, Organ, Wormwood; then anoint with Oyl of Mints, Mastich, Dill. Or, Take Mastich an ounce, Frankincense; Dill-seed, each two drams; Cummin-seed a dram, with juice of Mints and Flax, apply them to the stomach.

There is a disease like the Hickets in children from anger or grief, when the Spirits are much stirred, and run from the heart to the Diaphragma forceably, and hinder or stop the breath. Sometimes they have a shrill voice, the Spirits suddenly breaking forth; but when the passion ceaseth, this Symptom ceaseth.

### Chap. 18. Of Vomiting.

IT is from too much milk or bad milk, or from flegm that falls from the head to the stomach; but this is seldom in Children. It is often from a moist loose stomach: for as driness retains, so looseness lets go.

*The Cure.* If it be from much milk, they are better after vomiting. If it be from corruption of milk, that which is vomited is yellow, green, or otherwise ill

coloured, and stinking: worms are known by their Signs.

It is for the most part without danger in children; and they that vomit from their birth, are the lustiest, for the stomach being not used to meat, and milk being taken too much, oftentimes crudities are easily bred, or the milk is corrupted; and it is better to vomit these up, than keep them in. If Vomiting last long, it causeth Atrophy.

*The Prog-  
nostick.*

When it is from too much milk, give it less; if it be from corrupt milk, amend it, as I shewed. Cleanse the Child with Honey of Roses; and strengthen the Stomach with Syrup of Mints, Quinces. Or, Take Wood-Aloes, Coral, Mastich, each half a dram; Galangal half a scruple, with Syrup of Quinces make a Linctus.

*The Cure.*

If the humor be sharp and hot, give Syrup of Pomegranates, Currans, Coral.

Apply to the Belly the Plaister of Bread, the Stomach-Cerot, or Bread dipt in Wine hot. Or, Take Oyl of Mastich, Quinces, Mints, Wormwood, each half an ounce; of Nutmegs by expression half a dram, Chymical Oyl of Mints three drops. Coral hath an occult propriety, therefore it is hung about their necks,

### Chap. 19. Of the Torments or Pains of the Belly.

IT is often with the flux of the belly, and from milk alone that breeds wind and sharp humors. When it is corrupted, it gets to the guts, and causeth a gnawing pain: worms staying in the guts, do the same.

They

*The Signs.*

They cry continually, hate the breast, and toss to and fro. If it be from wind, it ceaseth, sometimes the belly swells, and they break wind. If it be from humors, it is constant: if it be tough flegm, the belly is bound, and the dung is slimy. If it be sharp, there is a flux yellow and green. If from worms, there are signs of them, and of crudities and wind.

*The Progno-  
stick.*

If this pain lasts long, they are weak, or have Convulsions or Epilepsie, it is worse than from corrupt milk and worms, and is dangerous.

*The Cure.*

If it be from crude humors and wind, give a Clyster. Take *Pellitory, Chamomil-flowers, each a handful, boil them in Chicken broth, two, three or four ounces, add Honey of Roses an ounce, with the yolk of an Egg make a Clyster.* This may be given safely to a child of two months old. Or give *Oyl of sweat Almonds, with Sugar-candy, and a scruple of Aniseeds*; it purgeth new born Babes from green choler and stinking flegm. If it be given with Sugar Pap, it allays the crying pains of the belly.

*Heur. meth.  
ad prax.  
L. 2. c. 26.*

Anoint the Belly with Oyl of Dill or lay *Pellitory stampt with Oyl of Chamomil to the belly. Or, Take Chamomil-flowers, Dill-tops each a handful; Fænugreek and Linseed, each half an ounce; boyl them in Wine, foment the belly twice a day before meat.*

If pain be from corrupt milk that is sharp, give Syrup of Roses, or Honey of Roses, or Syrup of Succry, with Rhubarb, or a Clyster of the Decoction of Bran, Pellitory, with Syrup of Roses.

And use outwardly Oyl of Roses, Dill and Chamomil.

Chap.

Chap. 20. *Of passing up of the  
Belly and Hypochondria.*

When they suck too much, the belly is swelled under the ribs, for want of concoction, and there are crudities in the stomach and mind, and also in the parts adjacent.

The Hypochondria, are hard, and puffed up, and there is straitness in the mouth of the stomach, and short breath.

It is easily cured with good dyet.

Give a thinner dyet, that the crudities may be concocted. Give no fresh nourishment till the first be digested, then give Honey of Roses to purge, Or the Decoction of Cardiacs, which is good for the heart and mouth of the stomach: it opens obstructions and cleanseth flegm. Or powder of Piony-roots, Cummin-seed, Jesamine; or make it up with Honey, Oyl of sweet Almonds or Sugar for a Liniment. Foment the sides with the Decoction of Cardiacs, Chamomil flowers, and Cummin-seed.

*The Signs.**The Prog-  
nostick,  
The Cure.*Chap. 21. *Of the flux of the  
Belly.*

It is, 1. From breeding of Teeth, with a Fever commonly, and the concoction is hindered, and the nourishment corrupted. 2. From much watching. 3. From pain. 4. From stirring of the humors by a Fever. 5. When they suck or drink too much in a Fever. Sometimes they have a flux without breeding of teeth, from outward cold in  
the

the guts or stomach, that hinders concoction.

*The Signs.* If it be from teeth, it is known by the signs in breeding of teeth: if from external cold, there are signs of no other Causes. If from a humor flowing from the head, there are signs of a Catarrh, and the excrement are froathy. If Crude humors are voided, there is wind, belching, and flegmatick excrements. If they be yellow, green, and stunk, the flux is from a hot and sharp humor.

*The Prognostick.* It is best in breeding of teeth, when the belly is loose; but if it be too great, and you fear Atrophy, it must be stopt: if black excrements are voided with a Fever, it is bad.

*Hipp. lib. de dentitio.*  
*The Cure.* A sucking child needs not cure so much as the Nurse; you must chiefly observe the condition of the milk, and mend it, if not change the Nurse, and let her not eat green fruit, and things of hard concoction. If the child suck not, take away the causes of the flux, with purges that bind after: as Syrup of Honey of Roses, or a Clyster. Take the decoction of Milium, Myrobalans, each two or three ounces; with an ounce or two of Syrup of Roses make a Clyster. After cleansing, if the cause be hot, give Syrup of dried Roses, Quinces, Mirtles, Coral, Currans, or the powder of Diamargariton, Coral, Mastich, Harts-horn, red Roses, or powder of Mirtles, with a little Sanguis Draconis.

Anoint with Oyl of Roses, Mirtles, Mastich; Or, Take red Roses an ounce, Mirtles, Mastich, each two drams; with Oyl of Mirtles and Wax make an Oyntment. Or, Take red Roses, Moulin, each a handful; Cypress roots two drams, make a Bag, boyl it in red Wine, apply it to the belly: or use the Plaister of Bread or Stomach-Oyntment.

If the cause be cold, and excrements white, give

give Syrup of Mastich and Quinces, with Mint-water.

Use outwardly Mints, Mastich, Cummin. As *Lib. 3. pars*  
Take Rose-seeds an ounce, Cummin, Aniseeds, each 2. cap. 3.  
two drams; with Oyl of Mastich, Wormwood and Cy. 6.  
Wax make an Oyntment.

### Chap. 22. Of Binding of the Belly.

It is from a cold and dry distemper of the guts from birth in some. 2. From slimy flegm that wraps the dung which sticks in the guts. This is from bad milk, when the Nurse eats gross food, slimy and astringent, or drinks little. 3. It is from a hot distemper of the Kidnies or Liver, that dries the excrements. 4. It is when cholera doth not stir up the guts to expel.

*The Signs.* If it be from a dry distemper of the guts, it is hard to be cured: if it be from slimy flegm, the dung is wrapt in it. If cholera comes not to the guts to provoke them to stool, the dung is white, and the body yellow.

*The Prognostick.* It is best in children to have a loose belly, and they are more healthful; for if it be bound, the belly is pained, and there is a head-ach.

*Hipp. 2. Aph. 35. The Cure.* First take away the cause: if it be from a hot distemper of any bowell, or dry, wash the child often, to moisten and cool it in a Bath of Succory and Lettuce boyled. In a cold distemper use not for the stomach, and in a dry, use moist things, as Oyl of Lillies, Dialthæa, Hens-grease, Butter. Let the Nurse avoid astringent meats, as Quinces, Medlars, Beans, and use Emollients. If the child be big, give juyce or Decoction of red Cel-worts,

*A Treatise of the Cure of Infants.* Part II.

worts, with a little Salt and Honey. If it be from slimy Flegm, give Honey to Syrup of Roses. Correct the hot distemper of the Liver and Reins, with Syrup of Violets, and Emulsions of the four great cold Seeds. If cholera come not from the Gall to the Guts, give the Decoction of Grass-roots, Fennel, Sparagus, Maidenhair.

Give Clysters to cut and cleanse tough Flegm. As, Take *Althaa-roots, Mallows, Pellitory*, each half a handful; *Fænugreek and Linseed*, each a dram; *Chanomil-flowers* a pugil: *boyl*, and to three or six ounces add three drams of *Cassia*, Oyl an ounce, and the yolk of an Egg.

To the Navel, apply Hens-grease, an Ox-gall. Or, Take *Aloes two drams, Ox-gall a dram, Scamony* a scruple with Butter make an Ointment. Fill a Walnut shell with it, and apply it to the Navel. Anoint the Belly with Emollients. Take fresh Butter, Goose and Hens-grease, each half an ounce; Oyl of sweet-Almonds, and Linseed, each two drams; Veal-marrow, *Dialthæa*, each two drams; with Wax make an Ointment: Bran and juyce of Danewort make a loosning Cataplasin for the Belly. Only keep it from the Stomach, as you must do other Cataplasms.

Chap. 23. *Of the Worms.*

*Ex authore  
lib. 4. de  
morb.*

IT is observed that children have had worms in their mothers belly, and voided them after they were born. But they are chiefly bred by mixing milk with other meats in a hot and moist constitution, and from sweet meats which worms love, and Summer-fruits: they are round and long, or broad and little.

*The Signs.*

Besides what is said in *Lib. 3. Part. 2. Sect. 2. Cap.*

Chap. 23. *Of the Worms.*

Cap. 5. Worms are known to be in a body, when there is much spittle, and a stinking breath, troublesome sleep, gnashing of teeth, crying and bawling; a dry cough, loathing, Vomiting, hickers, want of appetite, or too much thirst, a belly swelled, or bound, or too loose, thick white urin with pain, when the belly is empty, and the worms want food. There is a cold sweat over the face, and a high colour, with sudden paleness; sometimes a Fever and Convulsion which ceaseth presently. These are signs of round worms rather than of the flat.

Infants are often long troubled with worms without any great inconvenience, sometimes there are great Symptomes. The long round worms are worst, and have eaten sometimes the guts and belly through: with a Fever they are more dangerous: few are better then many, and small than great; white are better than those of other colours. The other Prognosticks are mentioned in other places.

*Preservation.*

It is better to prevent the breeding of worms, than to expel them, by eating of meats of good juyce, with Oranges and Pomegranates, and avoiding sweet, fat, and slimy meats, flesh, milk, and Summer-fruits, and figs. Drink thin Wine, and Grass and Sorrel-water with it, and with powder of Harts-Horn.

Let the belly be kept loose, with Clysters for children: or give the Decoction of Sebestens before meat, or of Wormwood and Scordium: but children will not take bitter things; therefore give grass-water and juyce of Lemmons or Citrons, or a drop or two of Spirit of Vitriol.

When you know by the signs, that there are worms,

V 2

*The Cure.*

worms, kill and repel them with Powder of Coralline, Wormseed, Harts-horn, or eight grains of Mercurius dulcis. Infuse them a night in Grass-water, and cast away the substance of the Mercury and give the Water. Or, Take Wormseed two drams, Coralline, Harts-horn prepared, each a dram; roots of Piony, Dittany, Magistery of Coral, each a scruple; make a Powder: or give the Essence of Peach-flowers, or the Decoction of Fern-water half an ounce, or an ounce. If there be a Fever, use colder, as juce of Lemmons, Pomegranates, Oranges, Vinegar, Harts-horn, Bezoar, Confection of Hyacinth: or this Potion; Take Grass-water four ounces, Syrup of Juyce of Citrions an ounce, of Violets half an ounce, Spirit of Vitriol two drops, give two spoonfuls.

Give bitter things at the mouth, and sweet at the fundament, as a Clyster of Milk. Or, Take Raisons ten, Figs seven, boyl them in water, take of it four ounces, add Sugar an ounce and half, make a Clyster. Use varieties, that the worms may not be too familiar with one.

Apply Peach-leaves to the Navel bruised or a Cataplasim of Ox-gall, Wormwood and St. Johns wort. Or, Take Powder of Wormwood, Gith, Century, Wormseed, Lupines, each half an ounce; with Oyl of Wormwood, and Wax half an ounce, make an Oyntment. Or, Take Treacle half an ounce, with juyce of Wormwood apply it to the Navel: or make a bath of peach-leaves and Wormwood, put the child into it up to the Navel. If there be a Fever, use colder things mentioned,

Chap.

## Chap. 24. Of the Rupture.

IT is from the Peritonæum loose or broken, when the small guts fall into the gods, from crying, cough, straining at stool, and from vehement motion, or a fall. Sometimes the Peritonæum is well, and a water falls from the belly into the gods.

The tumor is visible: if it be from a gut, it is in one part onely, as the right or left, and it may be felt, and the hole also through which it fell. If from water, it is even all over, and there was no cause of other Rupture. *The Signs.*

It is easier cured in Infants than in elder persons, for it is safer, but worse than that of water, which goes away of it self when the water is consumed. *The Prognosis.*

Let the belly be kept open, let not the child cry. Avoid vehement motion, lay him upon his back, and thrust it up gently, and apply this Plaister. Take Lambs-tongue, Sanicle, each half an ounce; Lentills, and Lupines, and red Roses in Powder, each two drams; Frankincense a dram, Alum half a dram, with the white of an Egg. Or, Take Frankincense, Cypress-nuts, Aloes, Acacia, each two drams, Mirrh a dram, with Izinglass make a Plaister. Or apply Gum Elemni steeped in Vinegar, till there be a Cream at the top, and with oyl of Eggs make a Cerot. *The Cure.*

Inwardly, Take Sanicle, Lambs-tongue, each half a handful; Agrimony a handful, Comphry the greater half an ounce, boyl them to a pint strained, add Sugar, give it often. Or give Powder of Mouse-ear, or Moonwort with Wine.

If it be from water anoint with Oyl of Elder, Bayes,



*A Treatise of the Cure of Infants. Part II.*  
 Bayes, Rue, or apply a Cataplasim of Powder of Beans, Fœnugreek, Linseed, Chamomil-flowers, Cummin-seeds, with these Oyls.

Chap. 25. *Of sticking out of the Navel.*

IT is without Inflammation. 1. When it was out well tyed, and too much left that sticks out. 2. When the Peritonæum is loose, and hath water or wind in it, from crying or coughing. 3. When the Navel is ulcerated, and the guts fall into it: this is called properly *Exomphalon*.

The Navel yields to the touch, but in an inflammation, it is hard; there is neither heat nor redness, and it lasts longer than an Inflammation.

*The Signs.*

If the Navel was not well cut, there will be too great a quantity; if the Peritonæum be not broken, but loose, the Navel starts not much out, and is not greater by crying; if it be broken, the tumor scarce appears when he lyes upon his Back, but it increaseth by crying or walking.

*The Prognostick.*

If the Midwife did not cut the Navel well, it is more troublesome than dangerous. If it be too large or ulcerated, at first it is easily cured, but afterwards it may cause a deadly Iliack passion, when the guts that fall in, are inflamed.

*The Cure.*

When the Peritonæum is loose, wind stretcheth the Navel; then use a Cataplasim of Cummin, Bayberries, and Lupines powdered in red Wine, or a Bag of Cummin and Spike boyled in red Wine. Then lay on an Astringent, and roul it.

If the Peritonæum be broken, first put in the gut, then bind it close, after you have laid on astringents

Chap. 26. *Of falling out of the Fundament.*  
 stringent Powders. Or, Take powder of Cypress-nuts, Frankincense, Myrrh, Mastich, Sarcocol, Alum, Izing-glass, each a dram; with the whites of Eggs make a Pultis, and give Medicines against Ruptures.

Chap. 26. *Of Inflammation of the Navel.*

IT is from pain, when it is not well tied, that draws blood to it. There is redness, hardness, heat and beating.

If it turns to an Impostume, and breaks, the guts come forth, and child usually dies. *The Prognostick.*

First abate pain. Take Mallows boyled and stamp two ounces, Barley-meal half an ounce, Lupines, Fœnugreek, each two drams; with Oyl of Roses make a Cataplasim. To repel Blood. Take Frankincense a dram, Acacia, Flebane-seed, each half a dram; with the white of an Egg make a Cataplasim. Hinder Suppuration as much as may be: but if it doth suppurate, Take Turpentine half an ounce, the yolk of an Egg, and Oyl of Roses two ounces. *The Cure.*

Chap. 27. *Of falling out of the Fundament.*

WHEN the muscle that shuts the Arse-hole is loose, the Fundament comes forth, the cause is moisture of the muscles after a flux, or straining at stool, in Tenesmus or Needings, or when the belly is bound.

The People will tell you the causes, and you may see it. *The Signs.*

The Prog-  
nostick.

It is easily cured, when it is from straining at stool, if it have not been long out. If it be from great store of moisture, it is hard to be cured, especially if there be a looseness of the belly, for then Medicines cannot lie on.

The Cure.

First, put it up: if it be swollen, foment it with the decoction of Mallows and Althæa, or anoint with Oyl of Lillies, then keep it in with astringents. As, Take *red Roses, Pomegranate-peels and flowers, Cyprus-nuts, each half an ounce; Sumach, Frankincense, Mastick, each two drams*: boyl them in red Wine, foment with a Spunge, then sprinkle on this Powder. Take *red Roses and Pomegranate-flowers, each half a dram; Frankincense, Mastick, each a dram*; allay it upon a clout, and lay it to the Fundament. See *Lib. 3. Part. 2. Sect. 1. Cap. 6.*

### Chap. 28. Of the Stone in the Bladder.

THE stone in the bladder is usual in Infants, as that of the kidnies is in elder people. How it is cured, we shewed before. In Infants it is from gross unclean milk made of tough meats; this too much taken in, causeth crudities fit to breed the stone, or pap of Barley-meal and milk may cause it. There is also a weakness in the Liver and Stomach, when they do not separate unprofitable food, but much earthy juyce remains in the chyle that breeds stones. Also a hot distemper in the reins, by which the chyle is drawn to the bladder; and if there be a native hereditary disposition to breed the stone, an earthy part is in the humor, which makes the urin thick; this is in bigger Boys more than in Infants.

They piss by drops, with itching and pain, the urine

Lib. 3. par.  
3. sec. 1. c.  
6. & par. 8.  
sec. 1. c. 1.

### Chap. 29. Of Difficulty and Stoppage of Urine. 265

urine is stopt often, and that which is pissed, is like clear water white, or like milk or whey: sometimes blood is pissed and the yard often stands.

It increaseth daily, if it be not opposed, and cannot be cured without cutting, which is dangerous for young or old. *The Prog-  
nostick.*

Prevent the breeding of it when you see the least disposition to it. Let the belly be always kept loose, and the Nurse eat no gross slimy food: make a bath of the decoction of Althæa, Mallows, Pellitory, Parsley, Dill, Fenugreek, Linseed, then anoint the bladder with Althæa, Oyl of Lillies and Scorpions, and apply a Cataplasm of Pellitory, boyled with Oyl of Lillies. *The Cure.*

A Powder. Take *Magistery of Crabs-eyes, white Amber, Goats-blood prepared, each a scruple; with Parsl.y. water, give it often. Or give two drops of spirit of Vitriol with half a dram of Cypress Turpentine.* *Lib. 3. pra.  
decal ves.*

### Chap. 29. Of Difficulty and Stoppage of Urine.

THERE are many causes in ripe age that are mentioned, but in Infants they are chiefly two causes, the thick humor that breeds the Stone, that makes a Strangury and Dysury; and the Stone that stops the bladder.

It is voided by drops, and the child cries, and the Urine is thick: you may try with the Catheter if there be a Stone. *The Signs.*

If it be not presently cured, it turns to the Stone: and all natural evacuation in Children being stopt is dangerous. *he Prog-  
nostick.*

It

It is as in the Stone, you must evacuate humors from the first passages with Honey of Roses, Cassia, Turpentine, foment and anoint as before with Grass-water, Rest-harrow, Dropwort-water and decoction of Red Pease. Or, take the blood of an Hare an ounce, Saxifrage-roots six drams, calcine them, give from a scruple to half a dram, with white Wine or Saxifrage-water.

### Chap. 30. *Of not holding the Urine.*

Some pifs not onely in their sleep, but always, because the muscle that should close the orifice of the bladder is weak; and when much water pricks it, it suffers it to come forth: sometimes a stone in the Bladder hurts the sphincter, so that it cannot do its duty. The cause of weakness is a cold humor and moist, from gross tough meats, from gluttony, and the like.

*The Signs.* It cannot be known in Infants, but it may in elder children, that know they ought not to piss a bed.

*The Prognostick.* If it come by custome, it turns to an habit, or a disease, and is hard to be cured in ripe years: if it be from distemper, it's easie to be cured.

*The Cure.* Alter the cold and moist distemper, dry and consume the flegm, let the Nurse have a hot drying dier with Sage, Hyfop, Marjoram, let not the child drink much, keep the Belly.

Outwardly anoint the Region of the Bladder with Oyl of Castus, Orris, and other driers: make a Bath of Sulphur, Allum, and Oak-leaves; or use Sulphur or Allum-baths: give this Powder.

### Chap. 32. *Of Leanness and Fascination.*

der. Take Hogs-bladders burnt, roasted Stones of a Hare, Cocks throat roasted, each half a dram; Acorns two scruples, Nip, Muce, each a scruple, give half a dram with Oak-leaves-water. See Lib. 3. Part 8. Sect. 2. Cap. 6.

### Chap. 31. *Of chafing in the Hips, called Intertrigo.*

It is the seperation of the Scarf-skin from the true in the Hips, that causeth pain and unquietness.

It is from sharp Piss, when the clouts are not changed often: in such as are fat, to whom filth sticks easily. *The Causes.*

The skin is off, and it looks red. *The Signs.* It is troublesome by reason of the pain, and causeth want of sleep, and ulcerateth if it be not cured. *The Prog-nostick.*

Change the clouts often, wash and cleanse the child often, sprinkle on this fine Powder. Of Litharge of Silver, seeds and leaves of Roses, burnt Allum and Frankincense, or anoint with white Oyntment and Diapompholigos. *The Cure.*

### Chap. 32. *Of Leanness and Fascination.*

Sometimes children and men grow lean; the elder from Fevers, Consumptions, and other diseases; but children pine away, and the cause is not known, and though they eat and perform other actions, they are not nourished nor grow.

The

*The Causes.*

The causes of Consumption in Infants, are little or bad milk by which no blood is bred fit to nourish the body, so that they thrive not till they change the Nurse.

The second is worms that suck away the nourishment.

The third is worms about the body without, as in the Back, Arms, or Legs, and all parts, these are very small, and breed in muculous parts, and stick in the skin, and never come wholly out, but after rubbing in baths, they put forth their heads like black hairs, and run in when they feel the cold air; they breed of slimy matter shut up in the capillar veins, which turns to worms from Transpiration hindered.

The fourth cause in the opinion of people, is fascination or witchcraft, either from the eyes of Witches, or by vapors, or by touch, or by words from a Witch: these are alledged by many Authors. I neither allow nor plainly deny all these wayes of fascination, though it is not credible that a child should suffer by words or looks only. I deny not but diseases may be sent from sick bodies to others, as the Leprosie, the French Pox, Consumption, and the like, and may infect Infants. And I believe that they may be hurt by Witches and malicious persons, by the help of the Devil and Gods permission, as *Basil* the Great Writeth: for wicked people make a league with the Devil that they may hurt such as they look enviously and angerly upon. And I add one thing, A habit of body that is grown very excellent, is in most danger, as *Hippocrates* saith, When children come to be very healthful and fair, they fall suddenly into a disease, and the vulgar not knowing the cause of it, impute it to Witchcraft.

*Basil* in *hodie invidia.*

The

*The Signs.*

The signs of the cause if they be lean from a Feaver or other disease is easily known. If these causes be not, view the Nurses milk; whether little, or her breasts dry without milk, and that is the cause of leanness in the child, if she have milk, see if it be not thick and dry, and choleric. And consider her constitution. If the milk be blameless, see if it be not from worms either in the guts or in the skin; the worms in the skin are known by putting the child into a bath and rubbing it, especial on the back with the hand, and with Honey and Bread, and then you shall see little ash-colour'd or black hairs come out of the skin.

If there be no outward nor inward cause, you may mistrust a venemous vapor or witchcraft.

If it be for want of milk, change the Nurse. If it be from worms in the skin, it is not hard to be cured; if it be from an occult quality, or from witchcraft, it is hard to be cured, because we know not the nature of the malignity.

If the Nurse have any disease, or be contrary to the constitution of the child, change her, kill and cast out the worms. If it be from worms in the back, rub it, and anoint it with Honey and Wheat-bread, and when their heads come forth, kill them with a Razor or crust of bread. Do this often.

There are many superstitious things carried about against witchcraft; some hang Amber and Coral about the childs neck, nor is it impossible that Plants and Gems should have power against witchcraft. As, Briony-root, and Elks-hoof are good against the Epilepsie; also there are Amulets against other Diseases.

If leanness be from a dry distemper of the whole

*The Cure.*

whole body there is no better Remedy then often bathing in decoction ofallows, Althæa, Branck-ursine, Sheeps-heads, and the like, and anoint after with the Oyl of sweet Almonds.

If he be hot and add to the Bath Lettice, Endive, Violets, Poly-heads, and anoint after with Oyl of Roses or Violets.

---

**FINIS.**

---



---

*Other Physical Books lately Printed and to be Sold by George Sawbridge.*

1. **O** *Riattrick, or Physick unrefined, The Common Errors therein refuted, and the whole Art reformed and rectified. Written by the Acute Philosopher and profound Physician, John Baptista Van Helmont.*
2. *The New dispensatory made by the Colledge of the Physicians, London, in Latine. And the same Translated into English, by Nich. Culpeper.*
3. *Riolanus Anatomy.*
4. *Veslingus Anatomy.*
5. *Bartholinus Anatomy.*
6. *Riverius Practice and Observations, all Translated by Nich. Culpeper.*
7. *A Treatise of Rickets, Being a Disease common to Children; wherein is shewed, 1. The Essence. 2. The Cause. 3. Signs. 4. The Remedies of the Disease.*
8. *The Hidden Treasure of the Art of Physick, Fully discovered in Four Books, by John Tanner, Student in Physick and Astrology.*

9. *Philosophia Muterata*: Containing the Practice and Operative part in gaining the Philosophers Stone. With a work Compiled by St. *Dunstan*, concerning the same. And the Experiments of *Rumelius*, and Preparations of *Angelo Sala*. Published by *Lancelot Colson*, Doctor in Physick and Chymistry.

10. *Physical Considerations of the Matter, Origination, and several species of Worms*: Whereby it doth probably appear to be an Epidemical Disease, killing more than either the Sword or Plague. Together with their various Causes, Signs, and Method of Cure. By *William Ramsey*, Doctor of Physick, and Physician in Ordinary to his Majesty.

---

**F I N I S.**